



DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY
HEADQUARTERS UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
3000 MARINE CORPS PENTAGON
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20350-3000

NAVMC 3500.42A
C 469
13 May 2011

NAVMC 3500.42A

From: Commandant of the Marine Corps
To: Distribution List

Subj: TACTICAL AIR CONTROL PARTY TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL; (SHORT
TITLE: TACP T&R MANUAL)

Ref: (a) MCO P3500.72A
(b) MCO 1553.3A
(c) MCO 3400.3F
(d) MCO 3500.27B W/Erratum
(e) MCRP 3-0A
(f) MCRP 3-0B
(g) MCO 1553.2B

1. Purpose. Per references (a) through (g), this T&R Manual establishes required training standards, regulations and practices regarding the training of Marines and sailors who required skills to effectively prepare other Marines for combat in the formal school environments.

2. Cancellation. NAVMC 3500.42

3. Scope

a. Formal school and training detachment commanders will use references (a) and (b) to ensure programs of instruction meet skill-training requirements established in this Manual and provide career-progression training in the events designated for initial training in the formal school environment.

b. Per reference (b), commanders will conduct an internal assessment of the unit's ability to develop long, mid and short-range training plans to sustain proficiency. Training plans will incorporate these events to standardize training and provide objective assessment of progress toward attaining combat readiness. Commanders will keep records at the unit and individual levels to record training achievements, identify training gaps and document objective assessments of readiness associated with training Marines. References (b) through (f) provide amplifying information for effective planning and management of training within the unit.

4. Information. Commanding General (CG), Training and Education Command (TECOM) will update this T&R Manual as necessary to provide current and relevant training standards to commanders and to ensure a current Core Capabilities Mission Essential Task List (METL) is available for use in Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS). All questions pertaining to the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program and Unit Training Management should be directed to: CG, TECOM (Ground Training Division C 469), 1019 Elliot Road, Quantico, VA 22134.

DISTRIBUTION STATEMENT A: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

5. Command. This Manual is applicable to the Marine Corps Total Force.
6. Certification. Reviewed and approved this date.


R. C. FOX
By direction

Distribution: PCN 10031976300

Copy to: 7000260 (2)
8145001 (1)

LOCATOR SHEET

Subj: TACTICAL AIR CONTROL PARTY TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL; (SHORT
TITLE: TACP T&R MANUAL)

Location: _____
(Indicate location(s) of copy(ies) of this Manual.)

RECORD OF CHANGES

Log completed change action as indicated.

Change Number	Date of Change	Date Entered	Signature of Person Incorporated Change

TACP T&R MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER

1 OVERVIEW
2 MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX
3 COLLECTIVE EVENTS
4 JOINT TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROLLER CORE
EVENTS
5 JOINT FIRES OBSERVER CORE EVENTS

APPENDICES

A TERMS AND DEFINITIONS
B T&R CHANGES
C AMMUNITION
D SIMULATION
E ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS
F PRE-REQUISITE TRAINING
G EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS
H INDIVIDUAL PERFORMANCE RECORDS

TACP T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 1

OVERVIEW

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
INTRODUCTION	1001	1-2
UNIT TRAINING	1002	1-2
UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT	1003	1-3
EVALUATION OF TRAINING	1004	1-3
ORGANIZATION	1005	1-4
T&R EVENT CODING	1006	1-4
COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE	1007	1-5
EVALUATION-CODED (E-CODED) EVENTS	1008	1-5
CRP CALCULATION.	1009	1-6
T&R EVENT COMPOSITION.	1010	1-7
NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, & CHEMICAL DEFENSE (NBCD) TRAINING	1011	1-10
NIGHT TRAINING	1012	1-10
OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)	1013	1-11
MARINE CORPS GROUND T&R PROGRAM.	1014	1-11
TACP T&R SPECIFICS	1015	1-12
MARINE TACTICAL AIR CONTROL PARTY.	1016	1-13
QUALIFICATIONS AND DESIGNATIONS.	1017	1-15
TRAINING POLICIES	1018	1-17
SIMULATION	1019	1-19
SYLLABUS STRUCTURE	1020	1-20
EVENT PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS	1021	1-21
TACP TRAINING MANAGEMENT	1022	1-21

TACP T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 1

OVERVIEW

1001. INTRODUCTION

1. The T&R Program is the Corps' primary tool for planning, conducting and evaluating training and assessing training readiness. Subject matter experts (SMEs) from the operating forces developed core capability Mission Essential Task Lists (METLs) for ground communities derived from the Marine Corps Task List (MCTL). T&R Manuals are built around these METLs and all events contained in T&R Manuals relate directly to this METL. This comprehensive T&R Program will help to ensure the Marine Corps continues to improve its combat readiness by training more efficiently and effectively. Ultimately, this will enhance the Marine Corps' ability to accomplish real-world missions.

2. The T&R Manual contains the individual and collective training requirements to prepare units to accomplish their combat mission. The T&R Manual is not intended to be an encyclopedia that contains every minute detail of how to accomplish training. Instead, it identifies the minimum standards that Marines must be able to perform in combat. The T&R Manual is a fundamental tool for commanders to build and maintain unit combat readiness. Using this tool, leaders can construct and execute an effective training plan that supports the unit's METL. More detailed information on the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program is found in reference (a).

1002. UNIT TRAINING

1. The training of Marines to perform as an integrated unit in combat lies at the heart of the T&R program. Unit and individual readiness are directly related. Individual training and the mastery of individual core skills serve as the building blocks for unit combat readiness. A Marine's ability to perform critical skills required in combat is essential. However, it is not necessary to have all individuals within a unit fully trained in order for that organization to accomplish its assigned tasks. Manpower shortfalls, temporary assignments, leave, or other factors outside the commander's control often affect the ability to conduct individual training. During these periods, unit readiness is enhanced if emphasis is placed on the individual training of Marines on-hand. Subsequently, these Marines will be mission ready and capable of executing as part of a team when the full complement of personnel is available.

2. Commanders will ensure that all tactical training is focused on their combat mission. The T&R Manual is a tool to help develop the unit's training plan. In most cases, unit training should focus on achieving unit proficiency in the core capabilities METL. However, commanders will adjust their training focus to support METLs associated with a major OPLAN/CONPLAN or named operation as designated by their higher commander and reported accordingly in the Defense Readiness Reporting System(DRRS). Tactical

training will support the METL in use by the commander and be tailored to meet T&R standards. Commanders at all levels are responsible for effective combat training. The conduct of training in a professional manner consistent with Marine Corps standards cannot be over emphasized.

3. Commanders will provide personnel the opportunity to attend formal and operational level courses of instruction as required by this Manual. Attendance at all formal courses must enhance the warfighting capabilities of the unit as determined by the unit commander.

1003. UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT

1. Unit Training Management (UTM) is the application of the Systems Approach to Training (SAT) and the Marine Corps Training Principles in a manner that maximizes training results and focuses the training priorities of the unit in preparation for the conduct of its wartime mission.

2. UTM focuses training on the tasks that are essential to a unit's wartime capabilities. The SAT process provides commanders with the requisite tools and techniques to analyze, design, develop, implement and evaluate the training of their unit. The Marine Corps Training Principles provide sound and proven direction and are flexible enough to accommodate the demands of local conditions. These principles are not inclusive, nor do they guarantee success. They are guides that commanders can use to manage unit-training programs. The Marine Corps training principles are:

- Train as you fight
- Make commanders responsible for training
- Use standards-based training
- Use performance-oriented training
- Use mission-oriented training
- Train the MAGTF to fight as a combined arms team
- Train to sustain proficiency
- Train to challenge

3. In order to maintain an efficient, effective training program, it is imperative that commanders at every level fully understand and implement UTM. Guidance for UTM and the process for establishing effective UTM programs are contained in references (b), (e), and (f), MCO 1553.3A, Unit Training Management, MCRP 3-0A, Unit Training Management Guide, and MCRP 3-0B, How to Conduct Training.

1004. EVALUATION OF TRAINING

1. Evaluation is a continuous process. Evaluation is integral to training management and is conducted by leaders at every level and during all phases of the planning and conduct of training. Training evaluations measure individual and collective ability to perform events specified in the respective T&R Manuals. To ensure training is efficient and effective, it is imperative that evaluation is an integral part of the training plan.

2. The purpose of formal and informal evaluation is to provide commanders with a process to determine a unit's proficiency in the tasks it must

successfully perform in combat. Informal evaluations should be conducted during every training evolution. Formal evaluations are often scenario-based, focused on the unit's METs, based on collective training standards, and usually conducted during higher-level collective events. References (a) and (b), MCO P3500.72A and MCO 1553.3A, provide further guidance on the conduct of informal and formal evaluations utilizing the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program.

1005. ORGANIZATION. T&R Manuals are organized in one of two methods: unit-based or community-based. Unit-based are written to support a type unit (i.e., Infantry, Artillery, Tanks, etc). Community-based are written to support an Occupational Field, a group of related Military Occupational Specialties (MOSs), or billets within an organization (i.e. EOD, NBC, Intel, etc). T&R Manuals are comprised of chapters that contain unit METs, collective training standards (CTS), and individual training standards (ITS) for each MOS, billet, etc.

1006. T&R EVENT CODING

1. Format. T&R events are coded for ease of reference. Each event has 4-4-4-digit identifier. The first four digits represent the community/MOS (e.g. TAC). The second four digits represent the functional or duty area (e.g. SUP, OAS, AS, etc.). The last four digits represent the level and sequence of the event.

2. Examples. The T&R levels are shown in Figure 1. An example of the T&R coding used in this Manual is shown in Figure 2.

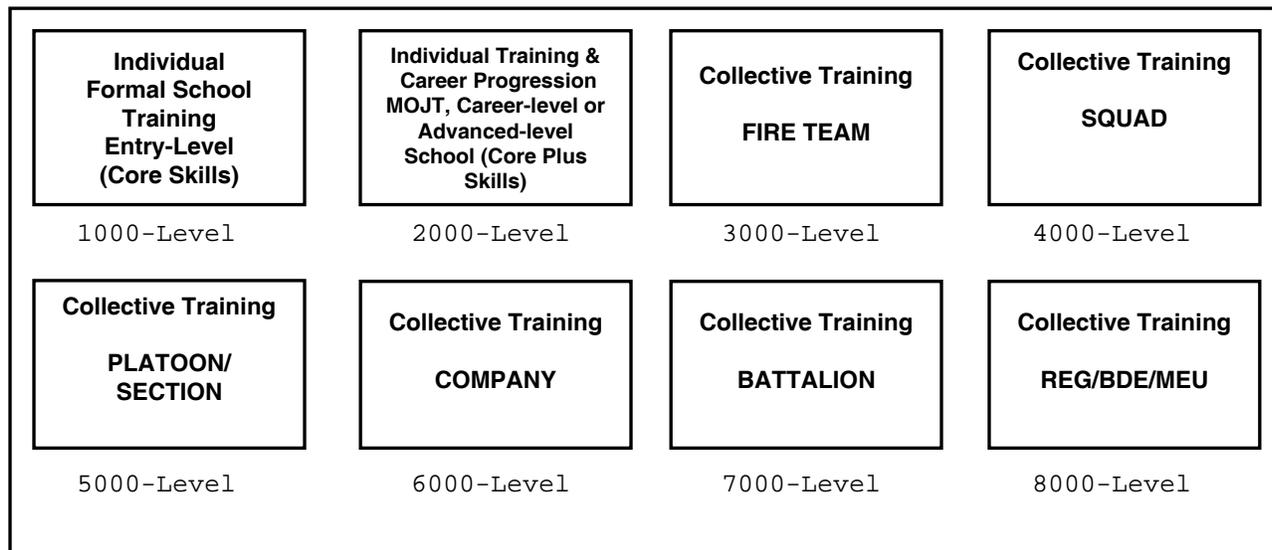


Figure 1: T&R Event Levels

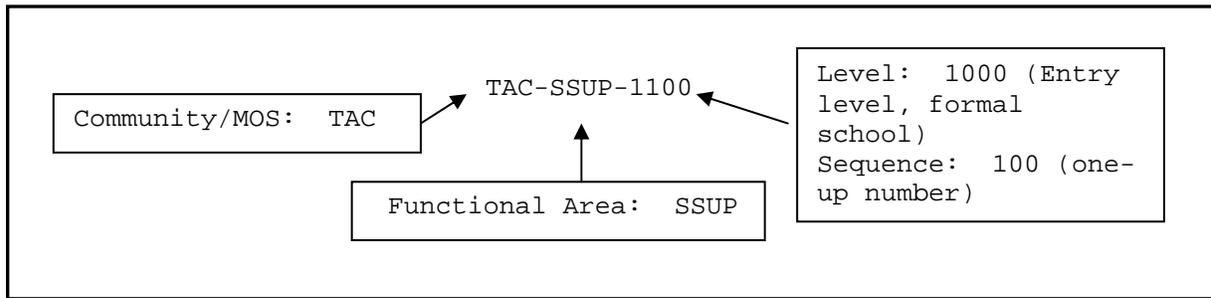


Figure 2: T&R Manual Coding

1007. COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE

1. The Marine Corps Ground T&R Program includes processes to assess readiness of units and individual Marines. Every unit in the Marine Corps maintains a basic level of readiness based on the training and experience of the Marines in the unit. Even units that never trained together are capable of accomplishing some portion of their missions. Combat readiness assessment does not associate a quantitative value for this baseline of readiness, but uses a "Combat Readiness Percentage," as a method to provide a concise descriptor of the recent training accomplishments of units and Marines.

2. Combat Readiness Percentage (CRP) is the percentage of required training events that a unit or Marine accomplishes within specified sustainment intervals.

3. In unit-based T&R Manuals, unit combat readiness is assessed as a percentage of the successfully completed and current (within sustainment interval) key training events called "Evaluation-Coded" (E-Coded) Events. E-Coded Events and unit CRP calculation are described in follow-on paragraphs. CRP achieved through the completion of E-Coded Events is directly relevant to readiness assessment in DRRS.

4. Individual combat readiness, in both unit-based and community-based T&R Manuals, is assessed as the percentage of required individual events in which a Marine is current. This translates as the percentage of training events for his/her MOS and grade (or billet) that the Marine successfully completes within the directed sustainment interval. Individual skills are developed through a combination of 1000-level training (entry-level formal school courses), individual on-the-job training in 2000-level events, and follow-on formal school training. Skill proficiency is maintained by retraining in each event per the specified sustainment interval.

1008. EVALUATION-CODED (E-CODED) EVENTS

1. Unit-type T&R Manuals can contain numerous unit events, some for the whole unit and others for integral parts that serve as building blocks for training. To simplify training management and readiness assessment, only collective events that are critical components of a mission essential task (MET), or key indicators of a unit's readiness, are used to generate CRP for a MET. These critical or key events are designated in the T&R Manual as

Evaluation-Coded (E-Coded) events. Formal evaluation of unit performance in these events is recommended because of their value in assessing combat readiness. Only E-Coded events are used to calculate CRP for each MET.

2. The use of a METL-based training program allows the commander discretion in training. This makes the T&R Manual a training tool rather than a prescriptive checklist.

3. Unique among Training and Readiness Manuals, the collective events contained in this manual are tied directly to those of the Infantry T&R (NAVMC 3500.44). When E-Coded collective training events of the Infantry T&R integrate aviation the corresponding collective events of this manual shall be included in the evaluation, in accordance with Chapter 3.

1009. CRP CALCULATION

1. Collective training begins at the 3000-level (team, crew or equivalent). Unit training plans are designed to accomplish the events that support the unit METL while simultaneously sustaining proficiency in individual core skills. Using the battalion-based (unit) model, the battalion (7000-level) has collective events that directly support a MET on the METL. These collective events are E-Coded and the only events that contribute to unit CRP. This is done to assist commanders in prioritizing the training toward the METL, taking into account resource, time, and personnel constraints.

2. Unit CRP increases after the completion of E-Coded events. The number of E-Coded events for the MET determines the value of each E-Coded event. For example, if there are 4 E-Coded events for a MET, each is worth 25% of MET CRP. MET CRP is calculated by adding the percentage of each completed and current (within sustainment interval) E-Coded training event. The percentage for each MET is calculated the same way and all are added together and divided by the number of METS to determine unit CRP. For ease of calculation, we will say that each MET has 4 E-Coded events, each contributing 25% towards the completion of the MET. If the unit has completed and is current on three of the four E-Coded events for a given MET, then they have completed 75% of the MET. The CRP for each MET is added together and divided by the number of METS to get unit CRP; unit CRP is the average of MET CRP.

For Example:

MET 1: 75% complete (3 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 2: 100% complete (6 of 6 E-Coded events trained)
MET 3: 25% complete (1 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 4: 50% complete (2 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 5: 75% complete (3 of 4 E-Coded events trained)

To get unit CRP, simply add the CRP for each MET and divide by the number of METS:

MET CRP: $75 + 100 + 25 + 50 + 75 = 325$

Unit CRP: 325 (total MET CRP)/ 5 (total number of METS) = 65%

1010. T&R EVENT COMPOSITION

1. Event components. This section explains each of the components of a T&R event. These items will be included in all of the events in each T&R Manual. Community-based T&R Manuals will have several additional components not found in unit-based T&R Manuals.

a. Event Code. The event code is a 4-4-4 character set: For Individual Training Events, the first 4 characters indicate the MOS. The second 4 characters indicate functional area (e.g. SUP, OAS, AS, etc.). The third 4 characters are simply a numerical designator for the event.

(1) Event acronyms will be from the following list:

- SUP-Supporting Arms
- OAS-Offensive Air Support
- AS-Assault Support
- AER-Aerial Reconnaissance
- EW-Electronic Warfare
- ASM-Air Space Management
- OPS-Unit Operations
- FSPT-Fire Support
- MAN-Maneuver
- INTG-Integration
- IUT-Instructor Under Training
- CHK-Events evaluated for certifications

(2) The letter S preceding the event code indicates the event is to take place in a simulation environment specified in the event condition.

b. Event Title. The event title is the name of the event.

c. E-Coded. This is a "yes/no" category to indicate whether or not the event is E-Coded. If yes, the event contributes toward the CRP of the associated MET. The value of each E-Coded event is based on number of E-Coded events for that MET. Refer to paragraph 1008 for detailed explanation of E-Coded events.

d. Supported MET(s). List all METs that are supported by the training event. The first MET listed is primary MET supported.

e. Sustainment Interval. This is the period, expressed in number of months, between evaluation or retraining requirements. Skills and capabilities acquired through the accomplishment of training events are to be refreshed at pre-determined intervals. It is essential that these intervals be adhered to in order to ensure Marines maintain proficiency. Commanders at all levels will want to map these intervals out so all events with the same sustainment interval are not due to be trained in the same month.

f. Billet. Billet title of the Marine executing the task. Individual training events may contain a list of billets within the community that are responsible for performing that event. This ensures that the billet's expected tasks are clearly articulated and a Marine's readiness to perform in that billet is measured.

g. Grade. Each individual training event will list the rank(s) at which Marines are required to learn and sustain the training event.

h. Initial Training Setting. For Individual T&R Events only, this specifies the location for initial instruction of the training event in one of three categories (formal school, managed on-the-job training, distance learning). Regardless of the specified Initial Training Setting, any T&R event may be introduced and evaluated during managed on-the-job training.

(1) "FORMAL" - When the Initial Training Setting of an event is identified as "FORMAL" (formal school), the appropriate formal school or training detachment is required to provide initial training in the event. Conversely, formal schools and training detachments are not authorized to provide training in events designated as Initial Training Setting "MOJT" or "DL." Since the duration of formal school training must be constrained to optimize Operating Forces' manning, this element provides the mechanism for Operating Forces' prioritization of training requirements for both entry-level (1000-level) and career-level (2000-level) T&R Events. For formal schools and training detachments, this element defines the requirements for content of courses.

(2) "DL" - Identifies the training event as a candidate for initial training via a Distance Learning product (correspondence course or MarineNet course).

(3) "MOJT" - Events specified for Managed On-the-Job Training are to be introduced to Marines, and evaluated, as part of training within a unit by supervisory personnel.

i. Event Description. For collective and core plus events the description provides a brief summary of the event.

Due to the unique and specific requirements of Core Skill Introduction events the Event Description for 1000-level codes only will consist of the five fields as described below.

(1)/	(2)/	(3)/	(4)/	(5)/
2	I, R	E	A(2 RW)	(N)

(1) Terminal Attack Controls required for event completion.

(2) Program of Instruction denotes the applicable program:

I = Initial Qualification or R = Refresher

(3) An "E" indicates an evaluated event.

(4) List the number and type of aircraft or category of simulator required for the completion of this event:

A = Event performed with aircraft.

SI = Event performed in a Category I simulator

SII = Event performed in a Category II Simulator

(5) Conditions:

- D = Shall be completed during day.
- N = Shall be completed at night (utilizing available night vision devices or completed unaided).
- (N) = May be completed day or night; if completed at night, available night vision devices may be utilized or completed unaided.
- DI = Shall be completed using digital integration system (TL DHS, AFATDS, etc. as applicable).
- (DI) = May be completed using digital integration system.

j. Condition. Describe the condition(s), real world or combat circumstances, in which the tasks are to be performed. They indicate what is provided (i.e., equipment, materials, manuals, aids, etc.), environmental constraints or conditions under which the task is performed, and any specific cues or indicators to which the performer must respond. When resources or safety requirements limit the conditions, this should be stated.

k. Standard. The performance standard indicates the basis for judging the effectiveness of the performance. It consists of a carefully worded statement that identifies the proficiency level expected when the task is performed. The standard provides the minimum acceptable performance parameters and must be strictly adhered to. The standard for collective events will likely be general, describing the desired end-state or purpose of the event; while the standard for individual events will more specifically describe to what proficiency level, specified in terms of accuracy, speed, sequencing, quality of performance, adherence to procedural guidelines, etc., and the event is to be accomplished.

l. Event Components. Describe the actions composing the event, or provide a list of subordinate, included T&R event codes and event descriptions. The event components help the user determine what must be accomplished and to properly plan for the event.

m. Prerequisite Events. Prerequisites are academic training or other T&R events that must be completed prior to attempting the task. They are lower-level events or tasks that give the individual/unit the skills required to accomplish the event or set the stage for the follow-on events. They can also be planning steps, administrative requirements, or specific parameters that build toward mission accomplishment.

n. Chained Events. Collective T&R events are supported by lower-level collective and individual T&R events. This enables unit leaders to effectively identify subordinate T&R events that ultimately support specific mission essential tasks. When the accomplishment of any upper-level events, by their nature, result in the performance of certain subordinate and related events, the events are "chained." The completion of chained events will update sustainment interval credit (and CRP for E-Coded events) for the related subordinate level events.

o. Related ITSS. Provide a list of all of the Individual Training Standards that support that event.

p. References. The training references shall be utilized to determine task performance steps, grading criteria, and ensure standardization of training procedures. They assist the trainee in satisfying the performance standards, or the trainer in evaluating the effectiveness of task completion. References are also important to the development of detailed training plans.

q. Distance Learning Products (IMI, CBT, MCI, etc.). Include this component when the event can be taught via one of these media methods vice attending a formal course of instruction or receiving MOJT.

r. Support Requirements. This is a list of the external and internal support the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. The list includes, but is not limited to:

- Range(s)/Training Area
- Ordnance
- Equipment
- Materials
- Other Units/Personnel
- Other Support Requirements

s. Miscellaneous. Provide any additional information that will assist in the planning and execution of the event. Miscellaneous information may include, but is not limited to:

- Admin Instructions
- Special Personnel Certifications
- Equipment Operating Hours
- Road Miles

1011. NBCD TRAINING

1. All personnel assigned to the operating force must be trained in nuclear, biological, and chemical defense (NBCD), in order to survive and continue their mission in this environment. Individual proficiency standards are defined as survival and basic operating standards. Survival standards are those that the individual must master in order to survive NBC attacks. Basic operating standards are those that the individual, and collectively the unit, must perform to continue operations in an NBC environment.

2. In order to develop and maintain the ability to operate in an NBC environment, NBCD training is an integral part of the training plan and events in this T&R Manual. Units should train under NBC conditions whenever possible. Per reference (c), all units must be capable of accomplishing their assigned mission in a contaminated environment.

1012. NIGHT TRAINING

1. While it is understood that all personnel and units of the operating force must be capable of performing their assigned mission in "every climate and place," current doctrine emphasizes the requirement to perform assigned missions at night and during periods of limited visibility. Basic skills are significantly more difficult when visibility is limited.

2. For the purposes of this manual night training is defined as training conducted subsequent to end of evening nautical twilight (EENT) and prior to beginning of morning nautical twilight (BMNT). To ensure units are capable of accomplishing their mission at night as well as during the day, they must train under the more difficult limited visibility conditions. All events in this T&R Manual will be conducted during day, night or during conditions of limited visibility as specified. When there is limited training time available, night training should be conducted in lieu of day training.

1013. OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)

1. ORM is a process that enables commanders to plan for and minimize risk while still accomplishing the mission. It is a decision making tool used by Marines at all levels to increase operational effectiveness by anticipating hazards and reducing the potential for loss, thereby increasing the probability of a successful mission. ORM minimizes risks to acceptable levels, commensurate with mission accomplishment.

2. Commanders, leaders, maintainers, planners, and schedulers shall integrate risk assessment in the decision-making process and implement hazard controls to reduce risk to acceptable levels. Applying the ORM process will reduce mishaps, lower costs, and provide for more efficient use of resources. ORM assists the commander in conserving lives and resources and avoiding unnecessary risk, making an informed decision to implement a course of action (COA), identifying feasible and effective control measures where specific measures do not exist, and providing reasonable alternatives for mission accomplishment. Most importantly, ORM assists the commander in determining the balance between training realism and unnecessary risks in training, the impact of training operations on the environment, and the adjustment of training plans to fit the level of proficiency and experience of Sailors/Marines and leaders. Further guidance for ORM can be found in references (b), MCO 1553.3A Marine Corps Unit Training Management, and (d), MCO 3500.27B Operational Risk Management.

1014. MARINE CORPS GROUND T&R PROGRAM

1. The Marine Corps Ground T&R Program continues to evolve. The vision for this program is to support the Uniform Joint Task List (UJTL), the Uniform Navy Task List (UNTL), and the Marine Corps Task List (MCTL) with METLs and unit training. In doing so, tying all training and training resources directly to unit missions. The Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS) has replaced ESORTS and is now the primary readiness reporting tool.

2. The purpose of this system is to measure and report on the readiness of military forces and the supporting infrastructure to meet missions and goals assigned by the Secretary of Defense. Training readiness in DRRS will be based primarily on METs. With unit CRP based on the unit's training toward its METs, the CRP will provide a more accurate picture of a unit's readiness. This will give fidelity to future funding requests and factor into the allocation of resources. Additionally, the Ground T&R Program will help to ensure training remains focused on mission accomplishment and that training readiness reporting is tied to commanders' METLs. This Manual will

facilitate supported unit DRRS reporting by quantifying training and certification requirements.

1015. TACP T&R SPECIFICS

1. Aviation Integration Training Continuum

a. The intent of the TACP T&R program is development of unit warfighting capabilities through a standardized program of instruction for unit and individual training. This manual is the backbone of a continuum of training that will ensure units and individuals build and maintain proficiency in the skills and capabilities required for the effective operational integration of aviation.

b. This manual meets or exceeds the Joint standards for individual certification and currency and establishes aviation integration policies specific to Marine units and individuals. It identifies the minimum requirements for certification training and provides for effective preparation of individuals to attend certification training. Unit level, individual and collective training is constructed in such a way as to provide flexibility for units to focus on anticipated mission sets while accomplishing currency requirements and collective training in a resource constrained environment.

2. Progressive Approach. This manual applies an academic to simulation to live execution training progression, from pre-certification through graduate level and collective training.

a. Prior to commencing the Core Skills Introduction phase of training, individuals accomplish academic and simulation training based upon their background and experience level. At the completion of the Core Skill Introduction phase (1000 codes), TACP members meet the requirements of the Joint Close Air Support Action Plan Memorandum of Agreement (JCAS AP MOA) and JCAS Joint Fires Observer MOA (JFO MOA) and are certified Joint Terminal Attack Controllers (SMOS 7502 or 8002) or Joint Fires Observers respectively. The Combat Ready Syllabus conducted at the unit level (specified 2000 codes) is required to fully prepare individuals to integrate aviation in support of unit operations. Completion of the Combat Ready Syllabus results in qualification as a JTAC or FAC by the commanding officer, or designation as an Air Officer. Completion of the Core Skill Plus training codes (all 2000 codes) develop individual skills that may be identified as a requirement as the result of mission analysis.

b. Collective training is tied directly to the Infantry T&R METL, and is applicable to regimental and battalion (8000 and 7000 codes) E-Coded events. Accomplishment of this training is essential to developing unit competencies for the integration of aviation and assessment of this training now contributes to infantry unit CRP. Training at the fire support team (FIST) and company level (3000 and 6000-level, respectively) provides the foundation upon which battalion and regimental capabilities are founded.

1016. MARINE TACTICAL AIR CONTROL PARTY

1. The Tactical Air Control Party within Marine Corps infantry battalions enables dispersed and simultaneous operations, and balances the requirement for individuals qualified to control aviation delivered fires with the need to maintain broad aviation integration expertise. This is accomplished by the assignment of 6 JTACs, 3 with the 8002 Billet MOS and 3 with the 7502 Billet MOS. The three 7502s and four of the JFOs are personnel permanently assigned to the infantry battalion. The three 8002s and nine of the JFOs are personnel attached to the infantry battalion from the artillery regiment. Figure 1-2 depicts the T/O distribution of TACP personnel in an infantry battalion. Separate battalions may have a different T/O distribution based on the commander's mission analysis and personnel manning differences.

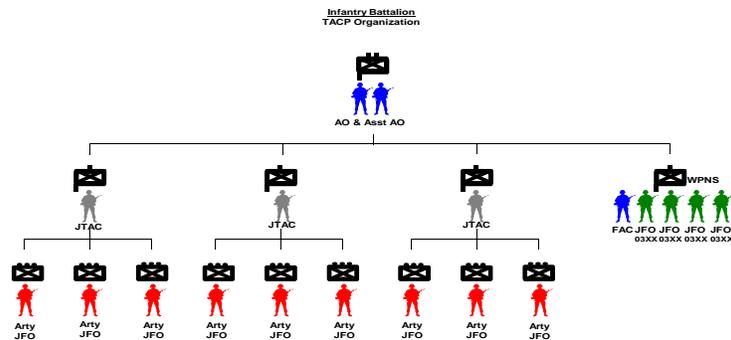


Figure 1-2

2. For the purposes of this Manual the term JTAC refers to all JTAC-certified members of the TACP. Use of the respective SMOS indicates that a distinction between aviator and non-aviator is relevant. The Marine Tactical Air Control Party consists of:

- a. Air Officer (AO) 7502.

(1) An aviator certified as a JTAC and qualified per this manual, assigned to a non-aviation unit in accordance with MCO 1301.25_, which is prepared to integrate all functions of aviation during the planning and execution of ground operations, and prepared to conduct required liaison with aviation units. While the Air Officer's responsibilities are based on the integration of the six functions of aviation, the focus of his efforts will be largely dependent upon the echelon of command to which he is assigned. The Air Officer is a primary staff officer and is designated by name in writing.

(2) The AO is the unit commander's primary advisor on the integration and employment of aviation, and unit aviation integrators. The AO is principally responsible to the commander for the training management and currency of unit FACs, JTACs, JFOs, and TACP ROs.

b. Assistant Air Officer (AAO) 7502. An aviator certified as a JTAC and qualified per this manual, assigned to a non-aviation unit in accordance with MCO 1301.25_, which is assigned to assist the AO in his duties and is prepared to assume them. The AAO enables continuous aviation integration at the battalion level during combat or contingency operations.

c. Forward Air Controller (FAC) 7502. An aviator certified as a JTAC and qualified per the this manual, assigned to a non-aviation unit in accordance with MCO 1301.25_, who is prepared to integrate all functions of aviation during the planning and execution of ground operations, and prepared to conduct required liaison with aviation units.

d. Joint Terminal Attack Controller (JTAC) 8002. An individual, usually with a ground combat arms background, who is certified and qualified per this manual and the JCAS AP MOA who coordinates, integrates and directs actions of combat aircraft engaged in Close Air Support (CAS) and other offensive air support (OAS) operations.

e. Joint Fires Observer (JFO). A Marine trained to request, adjust, and control surface-to-surface indirect fire, provide targeting information in support of Type 2 and 3 terminal attack control, and perform autonomous terminal guidance operations.

f. Radio Operator (RO) 0621. A Marine communicator assigned as an integral member of the TACP, responsible for ensuring required connectivity of the TACP, who is trained in the function and employment of the complete suite of TACP equipment.

g. Prerequisite Experience.

(1) SMOS 8002. A minimum of one year of operational experience with the integration of direct, indirect, and aviation fires in consonance with ground maneuver.

(2) SMOS 7502. Pilot or NFO with at least 2 years of operational flying experience.

h. Certification Requirements.

(1) Prior to commencement of certification training individuals shall complete required distance learning IAW Appendix F of this manual

(2) To be certified as a JTAC, the individual must successfully complete an accredited JTAC course, conduct a minimum of 12 live controls under the supervision of a qualified JTACI and complete a comprehensive evaluation. The 12 controls must consist of the following:

- 6 Type 1 controls
- 1 Type 2 control
- 6 fixed-wing controls
- 1 control must employ a ground laser designator
- 4 must expend live or training ordnance
- 4 controls in a non-permissive threat environment

- 2 must be at night
- 2 must be during daylight hours

(3) The 7502 or 8002 MOS is conveyed only by one of the EWTG TACP Schools.

(4) JTACs certified by an accredited curriculum other than a EWTG TACP Course may receive the 7502 or 8002 MOS upon completion of the syllabus detailed in Appendix F of this manual.

i. Qualification Requirements (Currency). Maintenance of qualification requires 6 successful controls completed within the previous six month period, and accomplishment of all recurring evaluation requirements.

(1) The 6 controls must consist of the following:

- 2 Type 1 control
- 1 Type 2 control *
- 3 fixed-wing controls
- 1 must expend live or training ordnance
- 1 control must employ a ground laser designator
- 2 controls in a non-permissive threat environment
- 1 must be at night **

*Remote observer (JFO) or video downlink may be used when available.

** Units deployed to or stationed at extreme latitudes (>49 deg) may defer the night control for qualification until night sorties can be executed.

(2) Units with a simulation device accredited IAW the JCAS AP MOA may replace 2 live terminal attack controls per 6 month period. The following live controls will not be replaced by simulation: 3 fixed-wing, 2 Type 1, 1 Type 2, 1 night, 1 expenditure of live or training ordnance, and 2 non-permissive controls.

1017. QUALIFICATIONS AND DESIGNATION

1. Qualifications. Individuals who meet and maintain the minimum requirements for the applicable position in accordance with this manual and joint standards shall be considered qualified. The qualification of Marine JTACs is conveyed in writing by the unit commander upon completion of the Combat Ready Syllabus set forth in Chapter 4 of this manual.

a. Joint Fires Observer. A Marine certified under established standards to act as an observer for a JTAC during Type 2 or Type 3 terminal attack control engagements.

b. JTAC - A Marine with the 7502 or 8002 MOS who has successfully completed the Core Skill Introduction phase of the USMC TACP T&R and is certified per the JCAS AP MOA.

c. Forward Air Controller - Pilot/NFO, qualified as a JTAC who has successfully completed the TACP T&R Core Skill Basic and Advanced levels of

training and is capable of integrating all six functions of Marine Aviation into the ground scheme of maneuver during major exercises and operations.

2. Designations. Designation by the commanding officer indicates a unique staff role, and increased responsibility within the unit. Individuals with the below designations are also essential elements of the standardized and progressive continuum of training established by this manual. Designation of an individual as unit Air Officer, JFO Evaluator (JFOE), JTAC Instructor (JTACI), JTAC Evaluator (JTACE), Tactical Air Control Party Instructor (TACPI), indicate responsibilities beyond that of FAC or JTAC, as described below. Each requires a designation from the commander, inserted into the IPR, confirming that the individual has met required prerequisites and performance standards.

a. Air Officer AO - As described in paragraph 1016.2.a above, the AO is the commander's primary advisor on the integration and employment of aviation, and is principally responsible for the training management and currency of unit TACPs and TACP members.

b. JTAC Instructor JTACI - A qualified JTAC who is designated an instructor of JTAC trainees. Only a JTACI shall supervise and initially certify JTACs.

(1) A JTACI requires at least one year of operational experience as a qualified JTAC or FAC(A) prior to designation as a JTACI, and is certified by the EWTGs as having completed the JTACI syllabus.

(2) Civilian contractors or DOD civilian personnel may serve as a JTACI provided the requirements set forth in paragraph 1017.2.b(1) above are met. A certified JTACI may only train and supervise JTAC trainees while assigned as permanent personnel at EWTGPAC or EWTGLANT or as delineated in paragraph 1018.5 of this manual.

c. Tactical Air Control Party Instructor TACPI. A SNCO or Officer graduate of the MAWTS-1 Air Officer Course who has, additionally, been certified a TACPI by the Commanding Officer of MAWTS-1; the TACPI has completed the transformation from an individual trained in terminal attack control to an experienced aviation integrator and aviation integration training manager.

(1) Each assigned regimental and MEU Air Officer shall attend the Air Officer Course and be a certified TACPI. At the regimental and MEU level, TACPIs shall supervise the development and implementation of subordinate unit collective and individual aviation integration training and shall facilitate the training and evaluation of adjacent units.

(2) The TACPI fulfills the JTACE and JFOE requirements set forth in the JCAS AP MOAs and shall conduct 18-month evaluations for JTACEs/JTACS/JFOs within Marine Corps units. The graduate level training and education of a USMC TACPI satisfies and exceeds the Joint requirement of one year of operational experience.

(3) Civilian contractors or DOD civilian personnel will not normally act as a TACPI. However, waivers to this policy will be considered by CG TECOM on a case by case basis. Requests for waiver shall be submitted to CG

TECOM via Commanding Officer, MAWTS-1, and shall detail the circumstances that necessitate the waiver, and the qualifications of the individual. Disposition of waiver requests will be provided by CG TECOM via naval message.

d. JTAC Evaluator (JTACE). A SNCO or Officer that is a Close Air Support SME at the unit level with at least one year of operational experience as a JTAC who has completed an upgrade evaluation by the TACPI and is designated by the unit commander (O-5 or above). The JTACE shall conduct 18-month evaluations for JTACs/JFOs within Marine Corps units.

e. JFO Instructor (JFOI). A JFOI is a joint fires SME at a JFO certifying schoolhouse designated by the schoolhouse commander to instruct all joint mission tasks (JMT) listed in the JFO MOA. A JFOI must have a minimum of one year operational experience in a joint fires duty area. Additional minimum requirements for qualifying as a JFOI:

- (1) Must have graduated from an accredited JFO Course, or
- (2) Must audit a JFO Course of Instruction, and one of the following:
 - (a) Have graduated from a FAC(A) course of instruction
 - (a) Have graduated from an accredited JTAC Qualification Course

f. JFO Evaluator (JFOE). A Sergeant, SNCO, or Officer that is a joint fires SME at the unit level with at least one year of operational experience as a JTAC who has completed an upgrade evaluation by the TACPI or JTACE and is designated by the unit commander (O-5 or above).

3. TACP Refresher Training. The EWTG TACP course is prescribed for previously qualified JTACs, FACs, and Air Officers returning to an operating force billet, who have previously completed the TACP Course but have not performed MOS duties within 24 months.

a. EWTG shall evaluate the previous experience and capabilities of each individual and tailor academic, practical application, simulator, and live fire event training as applicable.

b. JTAC Refresher training shall include the 1000-level R-coded T&R events and meet JCAS AP MOA requirements.

1018. TRAINING POLICIES

1. Authority and responsibility for training policy resides with CMC, CG MCCDC, CG TECOM and MARFOR CGs. Training policy is applicable during peacetime training evolutions and is not intended to restrict contingency/combat operations.

2. Policy Deviations. CG TECOM is the approval authority for deviations from T&R policy delineated in this manual. Requests for deviations shall be requested via Naval message to CG TECOM, G3 via the respective MEF.

a. Deployment Currency. JTACs deployed in support of combat/contingency operations are considered qualified for the duration of the deployment. Upon return JTACs who did not meet currency requirements during the deployment are considered unqualified and shall complete the number and category (e.g. appropriate night, fixed wing, ordnance, etc.) of controls the individual failed to accomplish in the previous 6 months.

b. Manning. For individuals that do not meet minimum requirements for JTAC certification training requests for deviation from the manning policies detailed in this manual and MCO 1301.25_ must be approved by CG TECOM, G-3 and approval forwarded to the respective EWTG prior to commencement of certification training.

3. Individual Training

a. Non-qualified personnel shall not conduct terminal attack control operations unless under the supervision of a certified and qualified JTAC.

b. A TACPI or JTACE should supervise the initial completion of the Combat Ready Syllabus delineated in Chapters 4 and 5 of this manual and Core Skill Plus codes. In the absence of a TACPI or JTACE, the unit AO or JTACs who have previously completed the Combat Ready Syllabus, may supervise initial 2000-level training.

c. JTAC in supervisory role.

(1) When supervising unqualified individuals or trainees during live-fire events, the supervising JTAC/JTACI shall be physically co-located with the unqualified individual, in a position to observe and assume control of the training, and possess the appropriate communication equipment required to do so.

(2) When a qualified JTAC is operating in a supervisory role with an unqualified individual, both the unqualified individual and the supervising JTAC may log the same control.

(3) When a qualified JTAC, who is resident at MAWTS-1 or Tactical Training Exercise Control Group (TTECG), is operating in a supervisory or instructional role, the supervising JTAC may log the same control(s) and T&R event code(s) as the qualified JTAC being supervised/instructed. A control which involves both a qualified JTAC and a qualified FAC(A) may be counted only by the individual who has terminal attack control authority at the time, regardless if the FAC(A) is operating as an extension of the JTAC or the Air Officer.

d. The USMC JTAC Qualification Process. Once certified, a 7502 or 8002 shall receive the JTAC Qualification per standards delineated in this manual. A JTAC will retain his qualification provided currency is maintained and recurring evaluation requirements are accomplished.

(1) For qualified 7502s, controls conducted as a FAC(A) satisfy JTAC currency requirements.

(2) At a minimum, JTAC qualified individuals shall complete a successful evaluation every 18 months by a designated TACPI or JTACE.

e. JTAC Re-qualification Process. JTACs who fail to comply with currency or evaluation requirements lose their qualification.

(1) Personnel who fail the 18-month certification shall complete a training program designed by a TACPI and assigned by the unit commanding officer. Additionally, these personnel must complete a re-evaluation before serving as a JTAC without supervision.

(2) Fewer than 24 months out of currency - to regain qualification, a JTAC must complete, at a minimum, the number and category (e.g. appropriate night, fixed wing, ordnance, etc.) of controls the individual failed to accomplish in the previous 6 months under the supervision of a qualified JTAC. Finally, the JTAC shall be evaluated by a qualified JTAC designated by the unit commander.

(3) 24 months or more out of currency - a JTAC who is unqualified for 24 consecutive months must regain qualification by completing the EWTG TACP Refresher Course or the MAWTS-1 Air Officer Course.

4. Unit Training

a. This manual equips commanders and staffs to make informed decisions in operational environments regarding the integration of aviation, by requiring certain academic periods of instruction and exposure to specific MAGTF aviation integration elements during training. This exposure, and the assessment of its accomplishment, is essential to the development of unit competencies for the integration of aviation throughout the elements of the MAGTF.

b. Individual training requirements should be accomplished in conjunction with collective training events whenever possible.

5. Augment Personnel

a. TTECG and MAWTS-1 will each maintain one JTACI at a minimum. These individuals will complete the JTAC certification of TTECG and MAWTS-1 staff members who have completed the academic and simulation elements of EWTG TACP School and are required for the mission of those two organizations.

b. Each EWTG will maintain one TACPI at a minimum in order to conduct 18-month evaluations of EWTG personnel. When feasible, resident TACPIs should conduct the 18-month evaluation of the alternate TACP School personnel. A MAWTS-1 Air Officer Department TACPI will conduct the 18-month evaluation of each EWTG TACPI.

c. TTECG will maintain at a minimum one TACPI. Required 18 month evaluations of TTECG TACPIs will be conducted by a MAWTS-1 TACPI or a EWTG TACPI.

1019. SIMULATION

1. Simulation events detailed in Chapter 3, 4, and 5 of this manual are designed to be conducted in the category of device specified in the

applicable training code. Attempting to conduct simulation codes during live training events is to be avoided.

2. This manual leverages heavily the variety of simulation systems increasingly available across the MAGTF. Training conducted during simulation events in accordance with this T&R will amount to a gradual progression of skill and proficiency, and will dramatically improve performance of individual integrators during live training events, and therein the effectiveness of those live events.

3. While the sequencing of events can be executed chronologically, flexibility to conduct multiple training codes at once exists. This flexibility is designed to enable units to create simulation training that is most suitable for anticipated missions, individual competencies, and time constraints.

4. TACP simulation may be conducted in one of two categories of devices.

a. Category I. Immersive simulation incorporating a domed visual environment allowing the user to utilize the same or similar equipment they will use during live missions. In accordance with the current JCAS AP MOA, controls conducted in a Category I simulator may substitute live controls. Example: Supporting Arms Virtual Trainer (SAVT)

b. Category II. PC based procedural trainer that may utilize front projection or helmet mounted display (HMD). Example: Deployable Virtual Training Environment (DVTE).

1020. SYLLABUS STRUCTURE

1. Core Skill Introduction. Core Skill Introduction training consists of the academic, simulation and live events of a formal curriculum for the initial certification JTACs. This training can only be conducted by a designated JTACI of a jointly certified schoolhouse. The Marine Corps jointly certified schoolhouses reside at the Expeditionary Warfare Training Groups (EWTG).

a. Core Skill Plus. Core Skill Plus training consists of those academic, simulations, and live events conducted at the unit level, usually during MOJT which finish the individual's preparation to integrate aviation in operational environments. Those events which are required elements of the Core Skill Plus phase are organized into the Combat Ready Syllabus.

2. Core Capabilities Training. The collective training detailed in Chapter 3 of this manual is designed to develop and maintain for the unit as a whole those competencies required to integrate aviation in operational environments and during combat operations. As with the individual training progression this phase requires an academic foundation and progresses to simulation and live events.

1021. EVENT PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1. Documentation. T&R requirements shall be documented and filed in Individual Performance Records (IPRs) in accordance with Appendix H. These records shall be maintained by the respective unit Air Officer. The unit operations department shall ensure that currency requirements are maintained and documented, and that the Combat Ready Syllabus of training is completed and documented.

a. Evaluation of Core Skill Introduction events shall only be conducted by JTACIs.

b. A graded evaluation sheet (Training Form) is required for all initial Core Skill Plus training as the JTAC progresses through each T&R syllabus phase. Evaluation of initial 2000 level codes shall be conducted by a TACPI, JTACE, or JTAC who has completed the Combat Ready Syllabus IAW this manual.

4. Logging of Events. Most of the Combat Ready Syllabus and collective events are designed to be conducted simultaneously with other codes. Multiple codes for a single event may be logged, provided all of the mission performance standards are achieved during the execution of the event.

5. Successful Terminal Attack Control. For the purpose of this document, control of a single CAS aircraft attack that results in the terminal attack controller issuing "cleared hot," "cleared to engage," "continue dry," or "abort" shall be considered 1 terminal attack control.

6. Controls per attack brief. Only 2 controls per CAS attack brief (9-line) may be counted.

7. Simulated Close Air Support (SIMCAS). Training conducted with live CAS aircraft which does not include the release of any ordnance. SIMCAS contributes to live certification and currency training. Not to be confused with simulation. Also known as "dry CAS."

8. Ordnance. Any munition employed from an aircraft (includes inert).

1022. TACP TRAINING MANAGEMENT

1. Individual Training Philosophy

a. Completion of the Core Skill Introduction phase (1000-Level) results in JTAC certification. However, completion of the Combat Ready Syllabus detailed in Chapter 4 of this manual will result in individuals who have mastered the basic skills required for effective air-ground integration.

b. JTACs assigned to Marine Corps units are not qualified to integrate aviation in operational environments until they have completed the Combat Ready Syllabus set forth in Chapter 4 of this manual. Upon successful completion of the Combat Ready Syllabus unit commanders shall designate individual JTACs as qualified in writing, and record that designation in the JTAC individual performance record (IPR).

2. Certification and Currency Management

a. During certification training, the EWTG course managers will ensure that minimum certification requirements and performance standards are achieved by student JTACs during the conduct of the Core Skill Introduction phase of training.

b. At the unit level Air Officers and individual JTACs are responsible for ensuring the minimum number and required elements of terminal attack controls are achieved in accordance with the standards set forth in this manual, and the JCAS AP MOA. While the preponderance of the 2000-level codes lends themselves to the inclusion of CAS training that will contribute to currency, a specific number of controls is not defined for any one event. Design and implementation of training that accomplishes required events, while maintaining qualification of individual controllers, is the responsibility of the unit and the Air Officer.

c. T&R Syllabus Evaluation. Establishment of standardized evaluation procedures provides commanders with an effective management tool for monitoring the progress of their personnel. Evaluation forms shall be kept in Individual Performance Records (IPR) per Appendix H.

3. Qualification Evaluation. A certified TACPI shall supervise the unit evaluation program. JTAC certified individuals shall be evaluated every 18 months for training standardization by a TACPI or JTACE and this evaluation shall include a detailed review of the individual's IPR.

4. Syllabus Training Exceptions. Deferral of T&R events shall be avoided to the greatest extent possible. Joint training certification, qualification, re-qualification, and currency requirements shall not be deferred. Deferring syllabus events shall only be authorized by unit commanding officers when, in his judgment, a training exception is warranted. Commanding officers may defer events when a lack of logistic support or training assets does not allow event completion in a timely manner. Deferred events are temporary training exceptions, and deferred events shall be completed when logistic support or training assets become available. The training officer shall annotate deferred events in IPRs until the event is successfully completed.

5. Qualification and Designation Management

a. Copies of designation and qualification letters signed by the unit commanding officer shall be included in IPRs per Appendix H.

b. JTAC Qualification Status Tracking. Units shall maintain a JTAC qualification status record/log of all 7502/8002 MOS individuals in their respective unit per Appendix H.

6. Individual Performance Records (IPR)

a. All training shall be documented and maintained in IPRs per Appendix H. IPRs shall be maintained at the respective unit level Operations Section. The unit level operations department is responsible for proper training and ensuring that individuals maintain required qualification obligations.

b. JTAC currency shall be recorded in IPRs per Appendix H.

7. Unit Inspection Process. The health of any Marine Corps program is directly related to the amount of oversight. An annual inspection of unit JTAC standardization and record keeping will be conducted by the TACPI or JTACE of an adjacent or higher unit.

TACP T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 2

MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK LIST (METL)	2000	2-2

TACP T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 2

MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX

2000. MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS LIST (METL)

1. The preponderance of aviation integration is conducted in support of or in conjunction with infantry unit training and operations. Therefore, the below listed Infantry METs (IAW the Infantry T&R) will serve as the TACP METL for collective aviation integration training within the Ground Combat Element.

2. During core capability training the performance steps delineated in this manual shall be included in the evaluation of related regimental (8000), battalion (7000) and company (6000) level training codes when aviation is to be integrated. Infantry T&R events which are E-Coded, and will include aviation, shall include evaluation of the ability to integrate aviation in accordance with the standards set forth in this manual.

3. The Infantry Mission Essential Tasks in paragraph 4, in accordance with the Infantry T&R, are supported by the collective training events delineated in this document.

4. Infantry Battalion and Regiment METL for TACP Training.

- MET 1** MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations
- MET 2** MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations
- MET 3** MCT 1.6.6 Conduct Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
- MET 4** MCT 1.3.2 Conduct Amphibious Operations
- MET 6** MCT 1.6.7 Conduct Operations in Urban Terrain

5. The tables in paragraph 6 list the E-Coded events that are most likely to include the integration of aviation, the conduct of which would require reference to this manual.

6. Since many of the METs are duplicated the matrix below is consolidated and reflects the appropriate supporting E-Coded Events for each MET.

MET 1	MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations
INF-MAN-8111	Conduct offensive operations
INF-FSPT-8302	Conduct fire support coordination
INF-MAN-7111	Conduct an attack
INF-FSPT-7302	Conduct fire support coordination
INF-MAN-6111	Conduct an attack
INF-MAN-6112	Conduct a night attack
INF-MAN-6113	Conduct a raid
INF-MAN-6116	Conduct a mechanized attack
INF-MAN-6117	Conduct a helicopter-borne attack
INF-MOUT-6801	Conduct urban operations

MET 2	MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations
INF-MAN-8132	Conduct defensive operations
INF-FSPT-8302	Conduct fire support coordination
INF-FSPT-7302	Conduct fire support coordination
INF-MAN-6132	Conduct defensive operations
INF-MOUT-6801	Conduct urban operations

MET 3	MCT 1.6.6 Conduct Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
INF-PAT-6141	Conduct security operations
INF-EXPO-6904	Conduct Non-Combatant Evacuation Operations (NEO)
INF-EXPO-6905	Conduct a Tactical Recovery of Aircraft and Personnel (TRAP)

MET 4	MCT 1.3.2 Conduct Amphibious Operations
INF-EXPO-8901	Conduct amphibious staff planning
INF-EXPO-8902	Develop an amphibious operation
INF-EXPO-8904	Conduct a Non-Combatant Evacuation Operation (NEO)
INF-EXPO-7901	Conduct amphibious staff planning
INF-EXPO-7902	Develop a landing plan
INF-EXPO-7903	Conduct an amphibious assault

MET 6	MCT 1.6.7 Conduct Operations in Urban Terrain
INF-MOUT-7801	Operate in urban terrain
INF-FSPT-6301	Conduct fire support planning
INF-MOUT-6801	Conduct urban operations (B)

TACP T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 3

COLLECTIVE TASKS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
CORE CAPABILITY TRAINING.	3000	3-2
CONCEPT FOR COLLECTIVE TRAINING	3001	3-2
REGIMENTAL-LEVEL ACADEMICS.	3002	3-2
INDEX OF REGIMENTAL-LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS	3003	3-4
REGIMENTAL-LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS.	3004	3-5
BATTALION-LEVEL ACADEMICS	3005	3-10
INDEX OF BATTALION-LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS.	3006	3-11
BATTALION-LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS	3007	3-12
COMPANY-LEVEL ACADEMICS	3008	3-22
COMPANY-LEVEL COLLECTIVE TRAINING	3009	3-22
INDEX OF COMPANY-LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS.	3010	3-23
COMPANY-LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS.	3011	3-24

TACP T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 3

COLLECTIVE TASKS

3000. CORE CAPABILITY TRAINING

1. Integration of aviation in operational environments requires understanding and experience of decision-makers as well as JTACs. A unit-level capacity to integrate aviation, especially aviation fires, can only be developed during unit-level training.
2. At the regimental and battalion level, the collective codes outlined below are linked to specific corresponding events of the Infantry T&R. When those codes of the Infantry T&R are to include the integration of aviation, the standards and performance steps of the below events shall be considered a requirement and will be incorporated.
3. Assessment of those 8000- and 7000-level events that are E-coded shall include assessment of the corresponding performance standards when aviation is a component of the assessed event.

3001. CONCEPT FOR COLLECTIVE TRAINING

1. The collective training events set forth in this chapter are blended with corresponding/related codes delineated in the Infantry T&R (NAVMC 3500.44), and build on them in order to develop, at the respective unit level, an understanding of the complexities and comprehensiveness of aviation integration, as well as a capacity to employ the full spectrum of available aviation in support of operations. A progressive approach is employed, wherein academics are taught to a specific unit audience, simulation infrastructure is leveraged to conduct partial task training at the small unit level, and dynamic live training events are then conducted which build upon the foundation developed with academics and simulation. This will create an overlap of collective and individual events resulting in an enhanced training value of those events.
2. Collective events do not include ordnance specifics and quantities. Individual codes required for qualification, designation and currency should be conducted in conjunction with or as part of collective events to the extent possible. Specific ordnance and aircraft requirements are detailed in Chapters 3-5 of this manual. While chained events are not specifically listed in the collective codes, the collective events provide opportunities for individual events to take place concurrently and should be simultaneously accomplished.

3002. REGIMENTAL LEVEL ACADEMICS

1. Regimental level aviation integration requires a foundation of understanding that is best established during academic periods of instruction. Regimental

academic training should be conducted by the regimental or MEU TACPI, air officer or assistant air officer prior to training events intended to integrate aviation into regimental/MEU operations. The training audience should include, but is not limited to, the regimental commanding officer, executive officer, operations officer, fire support coordinator, and members of the regimental fires approval chain.

Required Academics - baseline for all collective events:

6 Functions of Marine Aviation	MAWTS-1	2.0
TPOD and Aircraft Sensor Capes	MAWTS-1	2.0
MAGTF TACP Capes/Lims/Integration*	Unit	1.0
CAS	MAWTS-1	1.5

3003. INDEX OF REGIMENTAL-LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

Event Code	Event	Page
FSCC-OPS-8001	INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF URBAN OPERATIONS	3-5
FSCC-MAN-8002	INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF MOTORIZED/MECHANIZED OPERATIONS	3-6
INF-MAN-8003	CONDUCT AIR ASSAULT OPERATIONS	3-6
FSCC-MAN-8004	INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS	3-7
FSCC-FSPT-8005	INTEGRATE JOINT/COMBINED AVIATION	3-8

3004. REGIMENTAL-LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

FSCC-OPS-8001: INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF URBAN OPERATIONS

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operations or FRAG order.

STANDARD: Ensure aviation integration accomplishes specified and implied tasks set forth in operations/ FRAG order and commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. See INF-FSPT-8302, conduct fire support coordination as per Infantry T&R (NAVMC 3500.44).
2. Integrate UAS in support of ISR, fires and OAS.
3. Approve, modify or deny requests for aviation support.
4. Submit requests for aviation support to appropriate agencies.
5. Integrate precision surface to surface indirect fires and aviation.
6. Establish digital and voice communication systems and networks required to integrate aviation with regimental operations and surface fires (include but not limited to TBMCS and AFATDS).
7. Manage airspace in accordance with ACO, SPINs, FSCMs and ACMs.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 90-10-1 Infantryman's Guide to Combat in Built-Up Areas
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCDP 1-3 Tactics
4. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
5. MCWP 3-11.4 Helicopter Borne Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Anti-armor Operations
9. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
10. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations
11. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
12. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

AIRCRAFT: One UAS, One section of Assault support aircraft, One section of OAS aircraft, One CASEVAC/MEDEVAC aircraft

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event may be conducted during live or simulated regimental training event.

FSCC-MAN-8002: INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF MOTORIZED/MECHANIZED OPERATIONS

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operations or FRAG order

STANDARD: Ensure aviation integration accomplishes specified and implied tasks set forth in operations/FRAG order and commander's intent

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. See INF-FSPT-8302, conduct fire support coordination as per Infantry T&R (NAVMC 3500.44)
2. Integrate UAS in support of ISR, fires and OAS
3. Approve, modify or deny requests for aviation support
4. Submit requests for aviation support to appropriate agencies
5. Integrate precision surface to surface indirect fires and aviation
6. Establish digital and voice communication systems and networks required to integrate aviation with regimental operations and surface fires (include but not limited to TBMCs and AFATDS)
7. Manage airspace in accordance with ACO, SPINs, FSCMs and ACMs

REFERENCES:

1. FM 90-10-1 Infantryman's Guide to Combat in Built-Up Areas
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCDP 1-3 Tactics
4. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
5. MCWP 3-11.4 Helicopter Borne Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Anti-armor Operations
9. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
10. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations
11. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

AIRCRAFT: One UAS, One section of Assault support aircraft, One section of OAS aircraft, One CASEVAC/MEDEVAC aircraft

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event may be conducted during live or simulated regimental training event.

INF-MAN-8003: CONDUCT AIR ASSAULT OPERATIONS

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operations or FRAG order

STANDARD: Ensure aviation integration accomplishes specified and implied tasks set forth in operation/ FRAG order and commander's intent

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. See INF-MAN-7117, Conduct helicopter/tilt-rotor borne operations as per Infantry T&R (NAVMC 3500.44).
2. Integrate UAS in support of ISR, fires and OAS.
3. Approve, modify or deny requests for aviation support.
4. Submit requests for aviation support to appropriate agencies.
5. Integrate precision surface to surface indirect fires and aviation.
6. Establish digital and voice communication systems and networks required to integrate aviation with regimental operations and surface fires (include but not limited to TBMCs and AFATDS).
7. Manage airspace in accordance with ACO, SPINs, FSCMs and ACMS.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.4 Helicopter Borne Operations
2. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
3. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range
Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range
Facility Code 17671 Field Artillery Indirect Fire Range
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range

AIRCRAFT: One UAS, One section of Assault support aircraft, one section of OAS aircraft, One CASEVAC/MEDEVAC aircraft

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event may be conducted during live or simulated regimental training event.

INF-MAN-8004: INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operations or FRAG order.

STANDARD: Ensure aviation integration accomplishes specified and implied tasks set forth in operation/FRAG order and commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. See INF-FSPT-8302, conduct fire support coordination as per Infantry T&R (NAVMC 3500.44).
2. Integrate UAS in support of ISR, fires and OAS.
3. Approve, modify or deny requests for aviation support.
4. Submit requests for aviation support to appropriate agencies.
5. Integrate naval surface fires and aviation.
6. Establish digital and voice communication systems and networks required to integrate aviation with amphibious task force.
7. Manage airspace in accordance with ACO, SPINs, FSCMs and ACMs.

REFERENCES:

1. JOINT PUB 0-2 UNIFIED ACTION ARMED FORCES (UNAAF)
2. JOINT PUB 3-02.1 Landing Force Operations
3. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
4. MCDP 3 Expeditionary Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17330 Covered Training Area
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One UAS, One section of Assault support aircraft, One section of OAS aircraft, One CASEVAC/MEDEVAC aircraft.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: 1. CAST - Combined Arms Staff Trainer. 2. Networked computer simulation system. 3. Amphibious training area suitable for the employment of all surface and airborne craft. 4. Amphibious shipping.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event may be conducted during live or simulated regimental training event.

FSCC-FSPT-8005: INTEGRATE JOINT/COMBINED AVIATION

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operations or FRAG order.

STANDARD: Ensure integration of joint/combined aviation accomplishes specified and implied tasks set forth in operation/FRAG order and commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. See INF-FSPT-8302, conduct fire support coordination as per Infantry T&R (NAVMC 3500.44).
2. Integrate UAS in support of ISR, fires and OAS.
3. Approve, modify or deny requests for aviation support.
4. Submit requests for aviation support to appropriate agencies.
5. Integrate precision surface to surface indirect fires and aviation.
6. Establish digital and voice communication systems and networks required to integrate aviation with regimental operations and surface fires (include but not limited to TBMCS and AFATDS).
7. Manage airspace in accordance with ACO, SPINs, FSCMs and ACMs.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-52.2 Multi-Service Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Theater Air Ground System (TAGS)
2. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. JP 3-60 Joint Doctrine for Targeting
5. MCRP 3-16D Multi-Service TTP for Targeting Time-Sensitive Targets

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range
Facility Code 17671 Field Artillery Indirect Fire Range
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range

AIRCRAFT: One UAS, One section of Assault support aircraft, and One section of joint/combined OAS aircraft.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event may be conducted during live or simulated regimental training event.

3005. BATTALION LEVEL ACADEMICS. Battalion academic training should be conducted by the battalion, regimental/MEU TACPI or air officer. The training audience should include, but is not limited to the battalion commanding officer, executive officer, operations officer, fire support coordinator, battalion fire support officer, company commanders, FiST and TACP members, and members of the battalion fires approval chain.

Academic Requirements - baseline for all collective events

6 Functions of Marine Aviation	MAWTS-1	1.0
TPOD and Aircraft Sensor Capes	MAWTS-1	2.0*
MAGTF TACP Capes/Lims/Integration*	Unit	1.0*
CAS	MAWTS-1	1.5
Weaponneering	MAWTS-1	1.0*
PGM INTEGRATION	MAWTS-1	1.0
UAS OAS Employment	MAWTS-1	1.0*
Aircraft and sensor capabilities	MAWTS-1	1.0

Academic Requirements - prior to FSCC-MAN-7006

Urban CAS	MAWTS-1	1.0
-----------	---------	-----

Academic Requirements - prior to INF-MAN-7008

Air Assault Operations	MAWTS-1	1.5
------------------------	---------	-----

Academic Requirement - prior to FSCC-SIM-7003

Digital Avn Integration(STRIKELINK)	MAWTS-1	1.0
-------------------------------------	---------	-----

3006. INDEX OF BATTALION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

Event Code	Event	Page
FSCC-SIM-7001	INTEGRATE TWO OR MORE OAS SECTIONS IN SUPPORT OF GROUND MANEUVER	3-12
FSCC-SIM-7002	EMPLOY JFO(S) TO INTEGRATE OAS SUPPORT OF GROUND MANEUVER	3-12
FSCC-FSPT-7003*	EMPLOY JFO(S) TO INTEGRATE OAS SUPPORT OF GROUND MANEUVER	3-13
FSCC-SIM-7004	EMPLOY FAC(A) TO INTEGRATE OAS SUPPORT OF GROUND MANEUVER	3-14
FSCC-FSPT-7005*	EMPLOY FAC(A) TO INTEGRATE OAS SUPPORT OF GROUND MANEUVER	3-14
FSCC-SIM-7006	INTEGRATE DIGITAL FIRES INTEGRATION IN SUPPORT OF BATTALION OPERATIONS	3-15
FSCC-FSPT-7007*	INTEGRATE DIGITAL FIRES INTEGRATION IN SUPPORT OF BATTALION OPERATIONS	3-15
FSCC-MAN-7010	INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF MECHANIZED MANEUVER	3-16
FSCC-MAN-7011	INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF URBAN OPERATIONS	3-17
FSCC-MAN-7012	INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF VEHICLE MOUNTED PATROLS OR CONVOY OPERATIONS	3-18
INF-MAN-7013	CONDUCT AIR ASSAULT OPERATIONS	3-19
FSCC-MAN-7014	INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS	3-20
* Note	MAY BE CONDUCTED IN CONJUNCTION WITH 7010-7014 COLLECTIVE EVENTS	

3007. BATTALION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

FSCC-SIM-7001: INTEGRATE TWO OR MORE OAS SECTIONS IN SUPPORT OF GROUND MANEUVER

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operations or FRAG order, and a simulation event that supports battalion staff training.

STANDARD: Ensure integration of CAS accomplishes specified and implied tasks set forth in operation/FRAG order and commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish digital and voice COMM systems and networks required to integrate OAS.
2. Prepare mission products within FSCC required to integrate OAS.
3. Manage airspace in accordance with FSCMs and ACMs.
4. Integrate aviation and surface fires.
5. Employ two or more sections of OAS simultaneously, in support of ground maneuver.
6. Develop concept of employment for TACP elements (FAC, JTAC, JFO, and FAC(A)).

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
2. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: SIMULATION DEVICE THAT SUPPORT BATTALION STAFF TRAINING (CAST; CACCTUS; Deployable Virtual Training Environment).

FSCC-SIM-7002: EMPLOY JFO(S) TO INTEGRATE OAS SUPPORT OF GROUND MANEUVER

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operations or FRAG order, and a simulation event that supports battalion staff training.

STANDARD: Ensure integration of CAS accomplished using a JFO to provide target location, conduct target area correlation, and terminal guidance operations if appropriate.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Develop concept of employment for JFO.

2. Establish digital and voice COMM systems and networks required to integrate JFO and OAS aircraft.
3. Prepare mission products within FSCC required to integrate OAS.
4. Manage airspace in accordance with FSCMs and ACMs.
5. Integrate aviation and surface fires.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
2. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: SIMULATION DEVICE THAT SUPPORT BATTALION LEVEL JFO TRAINING (CAST; simulation center; Deployable Virtual Training Environment).

FSCC-FSPT-7003: EMPLOY JFO(S) TO INTEGRATE OAS SUPPORT OF GROUND MANEUVER

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operations or FRAG order.

STANDARD: Ensure integration of CAS accomplished using a JFO to provide target location, conduct target area correlation, and terminal guidance operations if appropriate.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Develop concept of employment for JFO.
2. Establish digital and voice COMM systems and networks required to integrate JFO and OAS aircraft.
3. Prepare mission products within FSCC required to integrate OAS.
4. Manage airspace in accordance with FSCMs and ACMs.
5. Integrate aviation and surface fires.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
2. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of OAS aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit (artillery or mortars).

FSCC-SIM-7004: EMPLOY FAC(A) TO INTEGRATE OAS SUPPORT OF GROUND MANEUVER

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operations or FRAG order, and a simulation event that supports battalion staff training.

STANDARD: Ensure integration of OAS accomplished using a FAC(A) to provide target location, conduct target area correlation, and conduct terminal attack control if appropriate.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Employ doctrinal digital and/or voice COMM systems and networks required to integrate FAC(A) and OAS aircraft.
2. Prepare mission products within FSCC required to integrate OAS.
3. Manage airspace in accordance with FSCMs and ACMs.
4. Integrate aviation and surface fires.
5. Approve, modify, or deny air delivered and surface fire missions developed by the FAC(A).
6. Develop concept of employment for FAC(A).

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
2. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation device that supports battalion level FiST training (CAST; simulation center; Deployable Virtual Training Environment).

FSCC-FSPT-7005: EMPLOY FAC(A) TO INTEGRATE OAS SUPPORT OF GROUND MANEUVER

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operations or FRAG order, and a battalion event that supports live FSCC training.

STANDARD: Ensure integration of OAS accomplished using a FAC(A) to provide target location, conduct target area correlation, and conduct terminal attack control if appropriate.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
2. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range
Facility Code 17671 Field Artillery Indirect Fire Range
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range
Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One FAC(A) aircraft, One section of OAS aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit (artillery or mortars).

FSCC-SIM-7006: INTEGRATE DIGITAL FIRES IN SUPPORT OF BATTALION OPERATIONS

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operations or FRAG order, and a battalion event that supports live FSCC training and digital system integration.

STANDARD: Ensure integration of OAS and indirect fire accomplished using a digital target location and designation handoff system.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish digital and voice COMM systems and networks required to integrate OAS aircraft.
2. Integrate aviation and surface fires using digital systems.
3. Employ TACP elements (FAC, JTAC, JFO, and FAC(A)).
4. Conduct digital exchange of information with OAS aircraft.
5. Conduct digital exchange of information with firing agency.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
2. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation device that supports battalion level FiST training (CAST; simulation center; Deployable Virtual Training Environment).

FSCC-FSPT-7007: INTEGRATE DIGITAL FIRES IN SUPPORT OF BATTALION OPERATIONS

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an operations or FRAG order, and a battalion event that supports live FSCC training and digital system integration.

STANDARD: Ensure integration of OAS and indirect fire accomplished using a digital target location and designation handoff system.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish digital and voice COMM systems and networks required to integrate OAS aircraft.
2. Integrate aviation and surface fires using digital systems.
3. Conduct digital exchange of information with subordinate TACP elements and adjacent agencies.
4. Conduct digital exchange of information with OAS aircraft.
5. Conduct digital exchange of information with firing agency.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
2. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17610 Grenade Launcher Range
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range
Facility Code 17671 Field Artillery Indirect Fire Range
Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of digital capable OAS aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit (artillery).

FSCC-MAN-7010: INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF MECHANIZED MANEUVER

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operations or FRAG order.

STANDARD: Ensure aviation integration accomplishes specified and implied tasks set forth in operation/FRAG order and commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. See INF-FSPT-7302, conduct fire support coordination as per Infantry T&R (NAVMC 3500.44).

2. Plan for and employ JFO and FAC(A).
3. Integrate UAS in support of ISR, fires and OAS.
4. Establish digital and voice COMM systems and networks required to integrate aviation and surface fires.
5. Manage airspace in accordance with FSCMs and ACMs.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-95 Cavalry
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live
Facility Code 17671 Field Artillery Indirect Fire Range
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17610 Grenade Launcher Range
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range
Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

AIRCRAFT: One UAS, One section of OAS aircraft, One CASEVAC/MEDEVAC aircraft.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: 1. Live fire and maneuver range capable of supporting air, surface and naval indirect fires. 2. Mortar/Artillery Unit. 3. Forward Air Controller (FAC)/Joint Terminal Attack Controller (JTAC).

FSCC-MAN-7011: INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF URBAN OPERATIONS

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operations or FRAG order.

STANDARD: Ensure aviation integration accomplishes specified and implied tasks set forth in operation/FRAG order and commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. See INF-FSPT-7302, conduct fire support coordination as per Infantry T&R (NAVMC 3500.44).
2. Plan for and employ JFO and FAC(A).
3. Integrate UAS in support of ISR, fires and OAS.
4. Establish digital and voice COMM systems and networks required to integrate aviation and surface fires.
5. Manage airspace in accordance with FSCMs and ACMs.

REFERENCES :

1. FM 90-10-1 Infantryman's Guide to Combat in Built-Up Areas
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCDP 1-3 Tactics
4. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
5. MCWP 3-11.4 Helicopter Borne Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Anti-armor Operations
9. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
10. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations
11. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
12. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS :

RANGE/TRAINING AREA :

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live
Facility Code 17671 Field Artillery Indirect Fire Range
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range
Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range
Facility Code 17610 Grenade Launcher Range
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

AIRCRAFT : One UAS, One section of OAS aircraft, One CASEVAC/ MEDEVAC aircraft.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS : 1. Live fire and maneuver range capable of supporting air, surface and naval indirect fires. (Note: Requires capability to employ laser targeting/designating devices). 2. Mortar/Artillery Unit. 3. Forward Air Controller (FAC)/Joint Terminal Attack Controller (JTAC).

FSCC-MAN-7012 : INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF VEHICLE MOUNTED PATROLS OR CONVOY OPERATIONS

SUPPORTED MET(S) : 1, 2, 3, 6

EVALUATION-CODED : NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL : 12 months

CONDITION : Given an operations or FRAG order.

STANDARD : Ensure aviation integration accomplishes specified and implied tasks set forth in operation/FRAG order and commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS :

1. See INF-FSPT-7302, conduct fire support coordination as per Infantry T&R (NAVMC 3500.44).
2. Plan for and employ JFO and FAC(A).

3. Integrate UAS in support of ISR, fires and OAS.
4. Establish digital and voice COMM systems and networks required to integrate aviation and surface fires.
5. Manage airspace in accordance with FSCMs and ACMs.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-95 Cavalry
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range
Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17610 Grenade Launcher Range
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live
Facility Code 17681 Field Artillery Scaled Range

AIRCRAFT: One UAS, One section of OAS aircraft.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: 1. Live fire and maneuver range capable of supporting air, surface and naval indirect fires. (Note: Requires capability to employ laser targeting/designating devices). 2. Mortar/Artillery Unit. 3. Forward Air Controller (FAC)/Joint Terminal Attack Controller (JTAC).

INF-MAN-7013: CONDUCT AIR ASSAULT OPERATIONS

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operations or FRAG order.

STANDARD: Ensure aviation integration accomplishes specified and implied tasks set forth in operation/ FRAG order and commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. See INF-MAN-7117, conduct a helicopter/tilt-rotor borne assault, as per Infantry T&R (NAVMC 3500.44).
2. Develop HWSAT and HEALT.
3. Plan for and employ JFO and FAC(A) in support of air assault operations.
4. Integrate UAS in support of LZ selection, ITG, ISR, and fires.
5. Establish digital and voice COMM systems and networks required to conduct air assault.
6. Manage airspace in accordance with FSCMs and ACMs.

REFERENCES:

1. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
3. MCWP 3-11.4 Helicopter Borne Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17681 Field Artillery Scaled Range
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range
Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

AIRCRAFT: One UAS, One section of Assault Support aircraft, One section of OAS aircraft, One CASEVAC/MEDEVAC aircraft.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: 1. Helicopter support. 2. Suitable helicopter landing zone.

INF-MAN-7014: INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operation or FRAG order.

STANDARD: Ensure aviation integration accomplishes specified and implied tasks set forth in operation/ FRAG order and commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. See INF-MAN-7903, conduct amphibious assault, as per Infantry T&R (NAVMC 3500.44).
2. Plan for and employ JFO and FAC(A).
3. Integrate UAS in support of ISR, fires and OAS.
4. Integrate naval surface fires and aviation.
5. Establish digital and voice COMM systems and networks required to integrate aviation with amphibious task force.
6. Manage airspace in accordance with FSCMs and ACMs.

REFERENCES:

1. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
2. JOINT PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
3. JOINT PUB 3-02.1 Landing Force Operations
4. MCDP 3 Expeditionary Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range
Facility Code 17681 Field Artillery Scaled Range
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range
Facility Code 17908 Amphibious Vehicle Training Area
Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

AIRCRAFT: One UAS, One section of Assault Support aircraft, One section of OAS aircraft, One CASEVAC/ MEDEVAC aircraft.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: 1. Helicopter support. 2. Suitable helicopter landing zone.

3008. COMPANY-LEVEL ACADEMIC REQUIREMENTS. Company-level aviation integration requires a foundation of understanding that is best established during academic periods of instruction. The preponderance of company level academic requirements is accomplished in conjunction with battalion level academic requirements. Battalion level academic requirements are listed in paragraph 3005.

3009. COMPANY LEVEL COLLECTIVE TRAINING. Distinct from higher level collective training events, Company level training builds upon FiST/TACP team-level partial task training conducted during simulation (3000 codes) in order to prepare the company to integrate aviation during company-level live events (6000 codes). All collective events required to prepare a company size unit to integrate aviation (3000 and 6000 codes) are listed together below.

In the event that unit mission analysis indicates company level dispersed operations are to be conducted, battalion and company staffs, to include air officers, should use the below events to develop training events that will most effectively prepare applicable units and personnel for those unique requirements.

3010. INDEX OF COMPANY-LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

Event Code	Event	Page
FSCC-SIM-3001	INTEGRATE TWO OR MORE OAS SECTIONS IN SUPPORT OF GROUND MANEUVER	3-24
FSCC-SIM-3002	EMPLOY JFO(S) TO INTEGRATE OAS SUPPORT OF GROUND MANEUVER	3-24
FSCC-SIM-3004	EMPLOY FAC(A) TO INTEGRATE OAS SUPPORT OF GROUND MANEUVER	3-25
FSCC-SIM-3006	INTEGRATE DIGITAL FIRES IN SUPPORT OF BATTALION OPERATIONS	3-26
FSCC-FSPT-6003*	EMPLOY JFO(S) TO INTEGRATE OAS SUPPORT OF GROUND MANEUVER	3-26
FSCC-FSPT-6005*	EMPLOY FAC(A) TO INTEGRATE OAS SUPPORT OF GROUND MANEUVER	3-27
FSCC-FSPT-6007*	INTEGRATE DIGITAL FIRES IN SUPPORT OF BATTALION OPERATIONS	3-28
FSCC-MAN-6010	INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF MECHANIZED MANEUVER	3-29
FSCC-MAN-6011	INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF URBAN OPERATIONS	3-30
FSCC-MAN-6012	INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF VEHICLE MOUNTED PATROLS OR CONVOY OPERATIONS	3-31
INF-MAN-6013	INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF AIR ASSAULT OPERATIONS	3-32
FSCC-MAN-6014	INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS	3-33
* Note	MAY BE CONDUCTED IN CONJUNCTION WITH 6010-6014 COLLECTIVE EVENTS	

3011. COMPANY-LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

FSCC-SIM-3001: INTEGRATE TWO OR MORE OAS SECTIONS IN SUPPORT OF GROUND MANEUVER

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

CONDITION: Given an operations or FRAG order, and a simulation event that supports FIST training.

STANDARD: Ensure integration of OAS accomplishes specified and implied tasks set forth in operation/FRAG order and commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Develop concept of employment for TACP elements (FAC, JTAC, JFO, and FAC(A)).
2. Establish digital and voice COMM systems and networks required to integrate OAS.
3. Prepare mission products within FSCC required to integrate OAS.
4. Manage airspace in accordance with FSCMs and ACMs.
5. Integrate aviation and surface fires.
6. Employ TACP elements (FAC, JTAC, JFO, and FAC(A)).
7. Employ two or more sections of OAS simultaneously, in support of ground maneuver.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
2. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
3. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: SIMULATION DEVICE THAT SUPPORT BATTALION STAFF TRAINING (CAST; simulation center) and Deployable Virtual Training Environment.

FSCC-SIM-3002: EMPLOY JFO(S) TO INTEGRATE OAS SUPPORT OF GROUND MANEUVER

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operation or FRAG order, and a simulation event that supports battalion staff training.

STANDARD: Ensure integration of OAS accomplished using a JFO to provide target location and conduct of target correlation.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Develop concept of employment for JFO.
2. Establish digital and voice COMM systems and networks required to integrate JFO and OAS aircraft.
3. Prepare mission products within FSCC required to integrate OAS.
4. Manage airspace in accordance with FSCMs and ACMs.
5. Integrate aviation and surface fires.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
2. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
3. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: SIMULATION DEVICE THAT SUPPORT BATTALION LEVEL FIST TRAINING (CAST; simulation center) and Deployable Virtual Training Environment.

FSCC-SIM-3004: EMPLOY FAC(A) TO INTEGRATE OAS SUPPORT OF GROUND MANEUVER

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operations or FRAG order.

STANDARD: Ensure aviation integration accomplishes specified and implied tasks set forth in operation/FRAG order and commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. See INF-FSPT-6301, conduct fire support planning as per Infantry T&R (NAVMC 3500.44).
2. Plan for and employ JFO and FAC(A) in support of maneuver, as appropriate.
3. Integrate UAS in support of ISR and fires requirements for maneuver.
4. Establish digital and voice COMM systems and networks required to integrate aviation with maneuver and surface fires.
5. Manage airspace in accordance with FSCMs and ACMs.
6. Approve, modify, or deny air delivered and surface fire missions developed by the FAC(A).

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
2. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
3. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: SIMULATION DEVICE THAT SUPPORT BATTALION LEVEL FIST TRAINING (CAST; simulation center) and Deployable Virtual Training Environment

FSCC-SIM-3006: INTEGRATE DIGITAL FIRES IN SUPPORT OF BATTALION OPERATIONS

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an operation or FRAG order, and a simulation event that supports company FIST training and digital system integration.

STANDARD: Ensure integration of CAS and indirect fire accomplished using a digital target location and designation handoff system.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish digital systems and networks required to digitally integrate fires.
2. Prepare mission products within FSCC required to integrate OAS.
3. Manage airspace in accordance with FSCMs and ACMs.
4. Integrate aviation and surface fires.
5. Digitally exchange information with subordinate or supporting agencies using a digital target location and designation handoff system.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
2. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
3. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: SIMULATION DEVICE THAT SUPPORT BATTALION LEVEL FIST TRAINING (CAST; simulation center) and Deployable Virtual Training Environment

FSCC-FSPT-6003: EMPLOY JFO(S) TO INTEGRATE OAS SUPPORT OF GROUND MANEUVER

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operation or FRAG order, and a simulation event that supports battalion staff training.

STANDARD: Ensure integration of OAS accomplished using a JFO to provide target location and conduct of target correlation.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Integrate UAS in support of ISR and fires requirements for maneuver.
2. Establish digital and voice COMM systems and networks required to integrate aviation with maneuver and surface fires.
3. Manage airspace in accordance with FSCMs and ACMs.
4. See INF-FSPT-6301, conduct fire support planning as per Infantry T&R (NAVMC 3500.44).
5. Plan for and employ JFO and FAC(A) in support of maneuver, as appropriate.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
2. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
3. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live
Facility Code 17671 Field Artillery Indirect Fire Range
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range
Facility Code 17610 Grenade Launcher Range
Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One UAS, One section of OAS aircraft.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: 1. Live fire and maneuver range capable of supporting air, surface and naval indirect fires. (Note: Requires capability to employ laser targeting/designating devices). 2. Mortar/Artillery Unit. 3. Forward Air Controller (FAC)/Joint Terminal Attack Controller (JTAC). 4. Joint Fires Observer (JFO).

FSCC-FSPT-6005: EMPLOY FAC(A) TO INTEGRATE OAS SUPPORT OF GROUND MANEUVER

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operations or FRAG order.

STANDARD: Ensure aviation integration accomplishes specified and implied tasks set forth in operation/FRAG order and commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. See INF-FSPT-6301, conduct fire support coordination as per Infantry T&R (NAVMC 3500.44).
2. Plan for and employ JFO and FAC(A) in support of maneuver, as appropriate.
3. Integrate UAS in support of ISR and fires requirements for maneuver.

4. Establish digital and voice COMM systems and networks required to integrate aviation with maneuver and surface fires.
5. Manage airspace in accordance with FSCMs and ACMs.
6. Approve, modify, or deny air delivered and surface fire missions developed by the FAC(A).

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
2. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
3. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range
Facility Code 17671 Field Artillery Indirect Fire Range
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range
Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range
Facility Code 17610 Grenade Launcher Range

AIRCRAFT: One UAS, One section of OAS aircraft, One FAC(A) capable aircraft.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: 1. Live fire and maneuver range capable of supporting air, surface and naval indirect fires. (Note: Requires capability to employ laser targeting/designating devices). 2. Mortar/Artillery Unit. 3. Forward Air Controller (FAC)/Joint Terminal Attack Controller (JTAC).

FSCC-FSPT-6007: INTEGRATE DIGITAL FIRES IN SUPPORT OF BATTALION OPERATIONS

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an operation or FRAG order, and an event that supports company FIST training and digital system integration.

STANDARD: Ensure integration of CAS and indirect fire accomplished using a digital target location and designation handoff system.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish digital systems and networks required to digitally integrate fires.
2. Prepare mission products within FSCC required to integrate OAS.
3. Manage airspace in accordance with FSCMs and ACMs.
4. Integrate aviation and surface fires.

5. Digitally exchange information with subordinate or supporting agencies using a digital target location and designation handoff system.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
2. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
3. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range
Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range
Facility Code 17671 Field Artillery Indirect Fire Range
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of digital-capable OAS aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit of artillery.

FSCC-MAN-6010: INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF MECHANIZED MANEUVER

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operation or FRAG order.

STANDARD: Ensure aviation integration accomplishes specified and implied tasks set forth in operation/FRAG order and commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. See INF-FSPT-7302, conduct fire support coordination as per Infantry T&R (NAVMC 3500.44).
2. Plan for and employ JFO and FAC(A) Integrate UAS in support of ISR, fires and OAS.
3. Establish digital and voice COMM systems and networks required to integrate aviation and surface fires.
4. Manage airspace in accordance with FSCMs and ACMs.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-95 Cavalry
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17671 Field Artillery Indirect Fire Range
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded
Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range
Facility Code 17610 Grenade Launcher Range
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range

AIRCRAFT: One UAS, One section of OAS aircraft, One CASEVAC/ MEDEVAC aircraft.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: 1. Live fire and maneuver range capable of supporting air, surface and naval indirect fires. (Note: Requires capability to employ laser targeting/designating devices). 2. Mortar/Artillery Unit. 3. Forward Air Controller (FAC)/Joint Terminal Attack Controller (JTAC).

FSCC-MAN-6011: INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF URBAN OPERATIONS

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operation or FRAG order.

STANDARD: Ensure aviation integration accomplishes specified and implied tasks set forth in operation/ FRAG order and commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. See INF-FSPT-6301, conduct fire support planning as per Infantry T&R (NAVMC 3500.44).
2. Plan for and employ JFO and FAC(A) in support of urban operations, as appropriate.
3. Integrate UAS in support of ISR and fires requirements for urban operations.
4. Integrate precision surface to surface indirect fires and aviation during urban operations.
5. Establish digital and voice COMM systems and networks required to integrate aviation with battalion operations and surface fires in the urban environment.
6. Manage airspace in accordance with FSCMs and ACMs.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 90-10-1 Infantryman's Guide to Combat in Built-Up Areas
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)

4. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
5. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)
Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One UAS, One section of OAS aircraft, One CASEVAC/MEDEVAC aircraft.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: 1. Live fire and maneuver range capable of supporting air, surface and naval indirect fires. (Note: Requires capability to employ laser targeting/designating devices). 2. Mortar/Artillery Unit. 3. Forward Air Controller (FAC)/Joint Terminal Attack Controller (JTAC).

FSCC-MAN-6012: INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF VEHICLE MOUNTED PATROLS OR CONVOY OPERATIONS

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operation or FRAG order.

STANDARD: Ensure aviation integration accomplishes specified and implied tasks set forth in operation/FRAG order and commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. See INF-FSPT-6301, conduct fire support planning as per Infantry T&R (NAVMC 3500.44).
2. Plan for and employ JFO in support of convoy operations, as appropriate.
3. Integrate UAS in support of ISR and fires requirements for motorized operations.
4. Establish digital and voice COMM systems and networks required to integrate aviation with motorized units and surface fires.
5. Manage airspace in accordance with FSCMs and ACMs.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
2. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
3. MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook
4. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

Facility Code 17671 Field Artillery Indirect Fire Range
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range
Facility Code 17610 Grenade Launcher Range
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range
Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

AIRCRAFT: One UAS, One section of OAS aircraft.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: 1. Live fire and maneuver range capable of supporting air, surface and naval indirect fires. (Note: Requires capability to employ laser targeting/designating devices). 2. Mortar/Artillery Unit. 3. Forward Air Controller (FAC)/Joint Terminal Attack Controller (JTAC).

INF-MAN-6013: INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF AIR ASSAULT OPERATIONS

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operation or FRAG order.

STANDARD: Ensure aviation integration accomplishes specified and implied tasks set forth in operation/ FRAG order and commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. See INF-MAN-6117, conduct a helicopter-borne assault, as per Infantry T&R (NAVMC 3500.44).
2. Develop documents accountability and aircraft employment documents.
3. Plan for and employ JFO and FAC(A) in support of air assault operations.
4. Integrate UAS in support of LZ selection, ISR and fires requirements for air assault.
5. Establish digital and voice COMM systems and networks required to integrate aviation with air assault operations and the air assault force subsequent to insert.
6. Manage airspace in accordance with FSCMs and ACMs.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
2. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
3. MCWP 3-11.4 Helicopter Borne Operations
4. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range

Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live
Facility Code 17671 Field Artillery Indirect Fire Range
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range

AIRCRAFT: One UAS, One section of Assault Support aircraft, one section of OAS aircraft, One CASEVAC/MEDEVAC aircraft.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: 1. Suitable helicopter landing zone.

INF-MAN-6014: INTEGRATE AVIATION ASSETS IN SUPPORT OF AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operation or FRAG order.

STANDARD: Ensure aviation integration accomplishes specified and implied tasks set forth in operation/ FRAG order and commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. See INF-MAN-6902, participate in an amphibious assault, as per Infantry T&R (NAVMC 3500.44).
2. Develop documents accountability and aircraft employment documents.
3. Plan for and employ JFO and FAC(A) in support of air assault operations.
4. Integrate UAS in support of LZ selection, ISR and fires requirements for air assault.
5. Establish digital and voice COMM systems and networks required to integrate aviation with amphibious operations and the assault force subsequent to insert.
6. Manage airspace in accordance with FSCMs and ACMs.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
2. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
3. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
4. MCWP 3-31.6 Supporting Arms Coordination in Amphibious Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17908 Amphibious Vehicle Training Area
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range
Facility Code 17671 Field Artillery Indirect Fire Range
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range
Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

AIRCRAFT: One UAS, One section of Assault Support aircraft, one section of OAS aircraft, One CASEVAC/ MEDEVAC aircraft.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: 1. Amphibious Shipping. 2. Suitable helicopter landing zone(s).

TACP T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

JTAC INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE.	4000	4-2
PREREQUISITES	4001	4-2
TACP CORE COMPETENCY	4002	4-2
7502/8002 CERTIFICATION	4003	4-3
7502/8002 COMBAT READY PHASE	4004	4-3
7502/8002 REFRESHER QUALIFICATION	4005	4-3
POI FOR REGIMENTAL/MEU AIR OFFICER	4006	4-3
JTAC CORE SKILL INTRODUCTION 1000-LEVEL EVENTS	4007	4-4
INDEX OF JTAC CORE SKILL INTRODUCTION 1000-LEVEL EVENTS. . .	4008	4-5
JTAC 1000 LEVEL EVENTS	4009	4-6
JTAC CORE SKILL 2000-2200-LEVEL EVENTS	4010	4-30
INDEX OF JTAC CORE SKILL 2000-LEVEL EVENTS	4011	4-31
JTAC 2000-LEVEL EVENTS	4012	4-32
INSTRUCTOR TRAINING EVENTS	4013	4-68
INDEX OF INSTRUCTOR TRAINING EVENTS.	4014	4-70
INSTRUCTOR TRAINING 2500-LEVEL EVENTS	4015	4-71
REQUIRED EVENTS (RQD), QUALIFICATIONS (QUAL)/ DESIGNATION (DESG) 2600-LEVEL EVENTS	4016	4-82
INDEX OF REQUIRED EVENTS (RQD), QUALIFICATIONS (QUAL)/ DESIGNATION (DESG) 2600-LEVEL EVENTS	4017	4-83
REQUIRED EVENTS (RQD), QUALIFICATIONS (QUAL)/ DESIGNATION (DESG) 2600-LEVEL EVENTS	4018	4-84
RANGE TRAINING REQUIREMENTS	4019	4-89
SIMULATOR TRAINING REQUIREMENTS	4020	4-91
TACP T&R EVENT MATRICES	4021	4-92

TACP T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

JTAC INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

4000. PURPOSE

1. The purpose of Core Skill Introduction (1000-level) training is to provide the knowledge and skills required to perform as a basically trained individual and to certify those individuals in accordance with joint standards.

2. Core Skill Plus (2000-level) events build upon the formal introductory training and complete the preparation of individuals for combat at the unit level with the Combat Ready Phase. Beyond the Combat Ready Phase, Core Skill Plus events include training that may be required to prepare individuals for specific circumstances.

4001. PREREQUISITES

1. TACP/JFO Course prerequisites are outlined in Appendix F of this manual, and are intended to establish a baseline of knowledge to prepare Marines from various backgrounds to be successful at entry level training and beyond. All 2000-level events assume successful completion of the Core Skill Introduction phase.

2. The JTAC Primer distance learning course is intended to establish a baseline of knowledge to prepare Marines from multiple MOSs to be successful at TACP School. All prospective EWTG TACP school participants (8002 and 7502) must complete JTAC Primer distance learning within 180 days prior to attending either EWTG. Primer checklist must be complete and submitted to applicable Occupational Field sponsor no less than one week prior to student report date.

4002. TACP CORE COMPETENCY

1. Introduction. The MAGTF concept is central to the existence of the Marine Corps. The Marine TACP's expertise and capabilities are directly reflected in MAGTF element integration at the tactical and the operational levels. The goal of the TACP T&R is to provide a progressive approach to prepare individuals, teams, and units within the MAGTF, and who are involved in aviation integration, to seamlessly support and facilitate the integration of Marine aviation within the MAGTF elements.

2. Events required to attain individual CSP. To initially attain CSP, TACP members must successfully complete all of the T&R events listed in the chart below for that core skill. Events listed below as "R-coded" are designated for the Refresher POI.

3. Instructor Requirements. Units should possess the following numbers of instructors and evaluators to support unit training management. Instructors should be positioned at the proper command level to facilitate training of all subordinate units.

Instructor Designation*	Reg	Div	MEU	MEF	ANGLICO	MARSOC	Separate Battalion	Arty Reg
TACPI*	2	1	1	0	4	4	1	2
JTACE*	1	0	1	0	2	2	1	3
JFOE	0	0	1	0	4	0	1	4

Table 4-4. *Designations are mutually exclusive

4003. 7502/8002 CERTIFICATION

<u>WEEKS</u>	<u>COURSE/PHASE</u>	<u>ACTIVITY</u>
1	Prerequisite Academics/Prac App	Unit Level
1	JTAC Primer Distance Learning	Unit-Level
4	TACP Course	EWTG

4004. 7502/8002 COMBAT READY PHASE

<u>WEEKS</u>	<u>COURSE/PHASE</u>	<u>ACTIVITY</u>
1	Required Academics	Unit-Level
4	Combat Ready Phase	Unit-Level
2	Core Skill Core Skill Plus	Pre-deployment Training

4005. 7502/8002 REFRESHER QUALIFICATION

<u>WEEKS</u>	<u>COURSE/PHASE</u>	<u>ACTIVITY</u>
1	Prerequisite Academics	Unit Level
1	JTAC Primer Distance Learning	Unit-Level
4	TACP Course	EWTG
2	Combat Ready Phase (Refresher)	Unit-Level

4006. POI FOR REGIMENTAL/MEU AIR OFFICER

<u>WEEKS</u>	<u>COURSE/PHASE</u>	<u>ACTIVITY</u>
1	Prerequisite Academics/Prac App	Unit Level
1	JTAC Primer Distance Learning	Unit-Level
4	TACP Course (as required)*	EWTG
6	Air Officer Course	MAWTS-1
2	Combat Ready Phase	Unit-Level

*Regimental or MEU Air Officers with the 7502 MOS prior to assignment, who exceed 24 months of currency, should complete refresher requirements during the MAWTS-1 Air Officer Course, and when doing so are not required to attend an additional EWTG TACP Course. Due to the graduate level of training

at the MAWTS-1 Air Officer Course, it is recommended that the individuals in this category prepare themselves by completing the JTAC primer course listed in Appendix F of this manual and/or taking advantage of any opportunities for refresher training i.e. simulation events, EWTG TACP Course audit, etc. prior to attendance.

4007. JTAC CORE SKILL INTRODUCTION 1000-LEVEL EVENTS

1. General. A prospective JTAC must attend Tactical Air Control Party (TACP) Course at Expeditionary Warfare Training Group (EWTG) Atlantic or Pacific to conduct the Core Skill Introduction phase (1000-level). Upon successful completion of the syllabus, the individual will be a certified JTAC IAW the JCAS AP MOA, and may fully be qualified as a JTAC by the unit commanding officer.

2. JTAC Core Skill Introduction Phase

a. Purpose. To introduce CAS and fire support tactics, techniques, and procedures to prospective JTACs in order to meet the certification requirements of the JCAS AP MOA.

b. General. The phase provides the prospective JTAC with exposure to artillery and mortar fire support, fixed and rotary wing close air support planning and execution, aircraft capabilities, TACP targeting equipment and procedures, fire support coordination, and CASEVAC procedures.

c. Academic Training. The TACP Course POI provides for academic instruction to support this phase of training. This training shall be conducted and documented in the JTAC's IPR.

d. Field and Simulator Training. Below are all the simulator and field training events conducted as part of the initial certification by the EWTG during the TACP Course.

e. Live Fire Exercise. The first live fire student event shall be a day mission. Subsequent missions can be either day or night for maximum flexibility.

f. Minimum Terminal Attack Controls. Course Managers shall ensure each student receives the minimum number and type of controls required by the stipulations in the JCAS AP MOA.

g. TACP Course Managers have the authority to waive prerequisites in exceptional circumstances to facilitate the continuation of training.

h. TACP Course Managers have the authority to conduct night events between the hours of sunset and end of evening nautical twilight (EENT) to facilitate training requirements.

i. All 1000 level events are initial events conducted at a formal school by TACP students.

4008. INDEX OF JTAC CORE SKILL INTRODUCTION 1000-LEVEL EVENTS

Event Code	Event	Page
TAC-SSUP-1100	CONDUCT TWO SIMULATED ADJUST FIRE MISSIONS WITH AN INDIRECT FIRE ASSET	4-6
TAC-SSUP-1101	CONDUCT TWO SIMULATED SUPPRESSION OF ENEMY AIR DEFENSE (SEAD) MISSIONS WITH AN INDIRECT FIRE ASSET	4-6
TAC-SOAS-1110	CONDUCT TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL WITH SIMULATED FW AIRCRAFT ON A VISUALLY MARKED TARGET	4-7
TAC-SOAS-1111	CONDUCT TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL WITH SIMULATED RW AIRCRAFT ON A MARKED TARGET	4-8
TAC-SOAS-1112	CONDUCT TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL WITH SIMULATED FW AIRCRAFT ON UNMARKED TARGETS	4-9
TAC-SOAS-1113	CONDUCT TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL ON A MARKED TARGET WHILE EMPLOYING INTERRUPTED OR NON-STANDARD SEAD	4-10
TAC-SOAS-1114	CONDUCT TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL ON A TARGET MARKED WITH A LASER WHILE EMPLOYING CONTINUOUS SEAD	4-11
TAC-SOAS-1115	CONDUCT TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL ON A TARGET MARKED BY AN AIRBORNE ASSET	4-12
TAC-SOAS-1116	CONDUCT TERMINAL ATTACK ON A MARKED TARGET WHILE EMPLOYING BATTLEFIELD ILLUMINATION	4-14
TAC-SOAS-1117	COORDINATE A COMBINED ATTACK WITH THE SUPPORT OF A FAC(A) ON A MARKED TARGET WHILE EMPLOYING SEAD	4-15
TAC-SOAS-1118	CONDUCT TYPE 2 TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL UTILIZING STAND-OFF WEAPON SYSTEMS	4-16
TAC-SOAS-1119	CONDUCT TYPE 2 TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL UTILIZING A JOINT FIRES OBSERVER	4-17
TAC-SOAS-1120	CONDUCT TYPE 3 TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL INTEGRATING UAS FOR TARGETING OR ATTACK	4-18
TAC-OAS-1130	CONDUCT TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL WITH FW AIRCRAFT ON A VISUALLY MARKED TARGET	4-19
TAC-OAS-1131	CONDUCT TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL WITH RW AIRCRAFT ON A VISUALLY MARKED TARGET	4-20
TAC-OAS-1132	CONDUCT TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL WHILE EMPLOYING CONTINUOUS, INTERRUPTED, OR NON-STANDARD SEAD FIRES	4-21
TAC-OAS-1133	CONDUCT TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL IN A PERMISSIVE THREAT ENVIRONMENT UTILIZING NIGHT VISION DEVICES (NVDs)	4-23
TAC-OAS-1134	CONDUCT TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL USING ADVANCED SYSTEMS	4-24
TAC-OAS-1135	CONDUCT OR OBSERVE TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL WITH RW AIRCRAFT USING 5-LINE ATTACK PROCEDURES	4-26
TAC-AS-1136	OBSERVE A SIMULATED CASEVAC EXECUTION DEMONSTRATION	4-27
TAC-CHK-1190	CONDUCT CORE SKILL INTRODUCTORY EVALUATION	4-28

4009. JTAC 1000-LEVEL EVENTS

TAC-SSUP-1100: CONDUCT TWO SIMULATED ADJUST FIRE MISSIONS WITH AN INDIRECT FIRE ASSET

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 0: I: E: SI or SII: D

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: In a simulated environment given a map, magnetic compass, binoculars, and communication equipment.

STANDARD: Adjust fire to within 50 meters of intended target within three rounds.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Execute target acquisition via aided and unaided day vision.
2. Determine target location via map plot with 100m accuracy.
3. Using doctrinal format and procedures formulate and transmit the Call for Fire to an artillery, mortar, or naval surface fires support asset.
4. As required adjust subsequent rounds using doctrinal format.
5. Properly end the mission and provide Battle Damage Assessment (BDA).

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Instructor, Category I or II simulation device, and simulator operator.

TAC-SSUP-1101: CONDUCT TWO SIMULATED SUPPRESSION OF ENEMY AIR DEFENSE (SEAD) MISSIONS WITH AN INDIRECT FIRE ASSET

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 0: I: E: SI or SII: (N)

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: In a simulated environment, day or night, given a map, target detection and location equipment, and communication equipment.

STANDARD: Effectively suppress simulated enemy defense asset with rounds impacting within 100 meters; effectively mark CAS target with indirect fire marking round impacting within 300 meters of target; coordinate pertinent information to terminal attack controller.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Locate the target using the grid, polar, or shift from known point technique.
2. Using doctrinal format formulate and transmit the SEAD Call for Fire to artillery, mortar, or naval surface fires support asset.
3. Provide the terminal attack controller timing and max ordinate data as required.
4. Evaluate effectiveness of suppression and spot the mark.

PREREQUISITE: TACP Course academic instruction.
TAC-SSUP-1100

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
2. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Instructor, Category I or II simulation device, and simulator operator.

TAC-SOAS-1110: CONDUCT TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL WITH SIMULATED FW AIRCRAFT ON A VISUALLY MARKED TARGET

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2/I: I: E: SI (2 FW): D

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: In a simulated environment with a map, magnetic compass, binoculars, and communication equipment, a section of simulated FW aircraft armed with Mk-80 series weapons and no targeting pod, in a permissive environment, an indirect fire mark is provided, and tactical risk assessment requires type 1 terminal attack control.

STANDARD: Using doctrinal control procedures and current TTPs, successfully coordinate and control attacks from simulated FW CAS platforms on a marked target within 20 minutes of aircraft check-in.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Detect target using aided day vision and determine location via map plot with 100 meter accuracy.
2. Coordinate indirect fire mark and CAS mission approval.
3. Develop 9-Line attack brief.
4. Safely route aircraft.
5. Transmit attack brief to aircraft.
6. Control CAS mission in accordance with doctrine and current TTPs.
7. Provide accurate and timely corrections from the mark.
8. Visually acquire aircraft, assess attack geometry, and provide timely and appropriate terminal attack control; repeat as required.
9. Provide accurate and timely corrections from lead aircraft's ordnance impacts.
10. Assess mission success.
11. Transmit BDA/BHA to attacking aircraft.
12. Safely route aircraft.

PREREQUISITE: TACP Course academic instruction.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Instructor, Category I simulator, and simulator operator.

TAC-SOAS-1111: CONDUCT TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL WITH SIMULATED RW AIRCRAFT ON A MARKED TARGET

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2/I: I: E: SI (2 RW): D

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: In a simulated environment with a map, magnetic compass, binoculars, and communication equipment, a section of simulated RW aircraft armed with unguided rockets and guns, an indirect fire mark is provided, in a

permissive environment, and tactical risk assessment requires type 1 terminal attack control.

STANDARD: Using doctrinal control procedures and current TTPs, successfully coordinate and control attacks from simulated RW CAS platforms on a marked target within 20 minutes of aircraft check-in.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Detect target using aided day vision and determine location using map plot with 100 meter accuracy.
2. Coordinate indirect fire mark and CAS mission approval.
3. Develop 9-Line attack brief.
4. Safely route aircraft.
5. Transmit attack brief to aircraft.
6. Control CAS mission in accordance with doctrine and current TTPs.
7. Provide accurate and timely corrections from the mark.
8. Visually acquire aircraft, assess attack geometry, and provide timely and appropriate terminal attack control; repeat as required.
9. Provide accurate and timely corrections from lead aircraft's ordnance impacts.
10. Assess mission success.
11. Transmit BDA/BHA to attacking aircraft.
12. Safely route aircraft.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller
4. NTPP 3-22.5 ASTACSOP, September 2008

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Instructor, Category I simulator, and simulator operator.

TAC-SOAS-1112: CONDUCT TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL WITH SIMULATED FW AIRCRAFT ON UNMARKED TARGETS

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2/I: I: E: SI (2 FW): D

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: In a simulated environment, with a map and communication equipment, given a threat allowing medium altitude sanctuary, a section of FW

aircraft armed with unguided ordnance and no targeting pod, a target in a permissive environment and commander's intent to prosecute using type 1 terminal attack control.

STANDARD: Using doctrinal control procedures and current TTPs, successfully correlate target location using talk-on techniques; coordinate and control attacks of simulated FW CAS platforms from the overhead within 20 minutes of aircraft check-in.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Detect target using aided day vision and determine location using terrain association with 400 meter accuracy.
2. Coordinate CAS mission approval.
3. Develop 9-line attack brief.
4. Safely route aircraft.
5. Transmit attack brief to aircraft.
6. Control CAS mission in accordance with doctrine and current TTPs.
7. Use talk-on techniques to facilitate target correlation.
8. Demonstrate understanding of CAS conducted using overhead or wheel tactics.
9. Visually acquire aircraft, assess attack geometry, and provide timely and appropriate terminal attack control.
10. Assess mission success.
11. Transmit BDA/BHA.
12. Safely route aircraft.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Instructor, Category I simulator, and simulator operator.

TAC-SOAS-1113: CONDUCT TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL ON A MARKED TARGET WHILE EMPLOYING INTERRUPTED OR NON-STANDARD SEAD

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2/I: I: E: SI (2 FW): D

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: In a simulated environment, with a map, coupled GPS/LRF system, and communication equipment, given a restrictive threat, a 4000 ft agl

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: In a simulated environment, with a map, target detection and location equipment, a laser target designator, and communication equipment, given a restrictive threat, a section of FW aircraft armed with LGWs and no targeting pod, and available surface fire support.

STANDARD: Using doctrinal control procedures and current TTPs successfully coordinate effective suppression and integrate and control aircraft attacks on a target marked with a ground-based LTD within 20 minutes of aircraft check-in.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Detect target using aided day vision and determine location via coupled GPS/LRF with 50m accuracy.
2. Coordinate continuous SEAD with a surface indirect fire asset and CAS mission approval.
3. Develop 9-Line attack brief.
4. Safely route aircraft.
5. Transmit attack brief to aircraft.
6. Control CAS mission in accordance with doctrine and current TTPs.
7. Assess suppression effectiveness and provide accurate and timely corrections from the mark.
8. Assess attack geometry, and provide timely and appropriate terminal attack control; repeat as required.
9. Provide accurate and timely corrections from lead aircraft's ordnance impacts.
10. Assess mission success.
11. Transmit BDA/BHA to attacking aircraft.
12. Safely route aircraft.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP Course academic instruction.
TAC-SOAS-1110 TAC-SOAS-1113

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Instructor, Category I or II simulator with a laser target designator, and simulator operator.

TAC-SOAS-1115: CONDUCT TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL ON A TARGET MARKED BY AN AIRBORNE ASSET

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2/I or II: I: E: SI or SII (2 FW): D

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: In a simulated urban environment, with a map, GRG, target detection and location equipment, a laser target designator, and communication equipment, given a section(s) of FW aircraft armed with precision weapons and carrying advanced targeting pods, the ground commander determines minimizing collateral damage is critical to mission success.

STANDARD: Using doctrinal control procedures and current TTPs, successfully coordinate and control precision weapons attack from CAS platforms on a target marked by an airborne asset in an urban environment within 20 minutes of aircraft check-in.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Detect target using aided day vision and determine location via coupled GPS/LRF with 50m accuracy.
2. Coordinate CAS mission approval.
3. Develop 9-Line attack brief.
4. Safely route aircraft.
5. Transmit attack brief to aircraft.
6. Control CAS mission in accordance with doctrine and current TTPs.
7. Coordinate target marking by an airborne asset.
8. Utilize GRG and or laser mark to correlate target location.
9. Match target location source and accuracy with appropriate weapon and recommend weapon to minimize collateral damage.
10. Visually acquire aircraft as required (Type 1); assess attack geometry and provide timely and appropriate terminal attack control; repeat as required.
11. Provide accurate and timely corrections from lead aircraft's ordnance impacts.
12. Assess mission success.
13. Transmit BDA/BHA to attacking aircraft.
14. Safely route aircraft.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP Course academic instruction.
TAC-SOAS-1114

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Instructor, Category I simulator with a coupled LRF/GPS, laser designator, and IR pointer, and simulator operator.

TAC-SOAS-1117: COORDINATE A COMBINED ATTACK WITH THE SUPPORT OF A FAC(A) ON A MARKED TARGET WHILE EMPLOYING SEAD

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 4/I, II, or III: I: E: SI (4 FW and 2 RW): N

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: In a simulated environment at night with a restrictive threat, with a map, target detection and location equipment, a laser target designator, an IR pointer, NVGs, and communication equipment, a section(s) of FW and RW aircraft armed with non-precision and precision guided weapons and a FAC(A) capable aircrew.

STANDARD: Using doctrinal control procedures and current TTPs, generate an efficient game plan, successfully coordinate SEAD and target marking, and coordinate, integrate, and control a combined attack from CAS platforms.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Use aided night vision to determine target location via map plot, coupled GPS/LRF, and airborne sensors with 50 meter accuracy.
2. Coordinate SEAD with a surface indirect fire asset and CAS mission approval.
3. Develop 9-Line attack brief.
4. Safely route aircraft.
5. Develop and successfully convey a game plan for a combined attack.
6. Transmit attack brief to aircraft.
7. Control CAS mission in accordance with doctrine and current TTPs with the support of a FAC(A).
8. Assess suppression effectiveness.
9. Safely integrate multiple assets and optimize use of aircraft, sensor, and weapons capability to mitigate threat and accomplish commander's intent.

10. Visually acquire aircraft as required (Type 1); assess attack geometry and provide timely and appropriate terminal attack control; repeat as required.
11. Provide accurate and timely corrections from lead aircraft's ordnance impacts.
12. Assess mission success.
13. Transmit BDA/BHA to attacking aircraft.
14. Safely route aircraft.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TAC-SOAS-1116

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Instructor, Category I simulator with a coupled LRF/GPS, laser designator, and IR pointer, and simulator operator.

TAC-SOAS-1118: CONDUCT TYPE 2 TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL UTILIZING STAND-OFF WEAPON SYSTEMS

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2/II: I: E: SI or SII or PE (2 or 4 FW): (N)

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: In a live or simulated urban environment, with a map and TACP suite equipment, given a simulated section of FW aircraft armed with IAMs and a nominated target.

STANDARD: Using doctrinal control procedures and current TTPs, successfully coordinate and control CAS platforms employing IAMs using a standoff delivery profile, on a CAS target within 30 minutes of aircraft check-in.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Detect target using aided day vision and determine location via terrain association with 400 meter accuracy.
2. Coordinate CAS mission approval.

3. Develop 9-line attack brief with special consideration to attack geometry and weaponeering to reduce collateral damage in an urban environment, and achieve desired results.
4. Safely route aircraft.
5. Transmit attack brief to aircraft.
6. Control CAS mission in accordance with doctrine and current TTPs.
7. Use talk-on techniques to facilitate target correlation.
8. Provide timely and appropriate terminal attack control.
9. Assess mission success.
10. Transmit BDA/BHA.
11. Safely route aircraft.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Instructor, Category I or II simulator and simulator operator, or urban training area and TACP equipment.

TAC-SOAS-1119: CONDUCT TYPE 2 TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL UTILIZING A JOINT FIRES OBSERVER

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2/II or III: I: E: SI or SII or PE (2 or 4 FW): (N)

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: In a live or simulated COC environment, with a map and TACP suite equipment, given a simulated section of FW or RW aircraft, a Joint Fires Observer with accurate real-time targeting information, and an operations officer providing commander's intent.

STANDARD: Using doctrinal control procedures coordinate and control CAS platforms employing a Joint Fires Observer to provide real-time targeting data and/or Terminal Guidance Operations (TGO).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Execute target acquisition via Joint Fires Observer.
2. Coordinate CAS mission approval.

3. Develop 9-line attack brief with special consideration to attack geometry and weaponeering to achieve desired results.
4. Safely route aircraft.
5. Transmit attack brief to aircraft.
6. Control CAS mission in accordance with doctrine and current TTPs with the support of a remote observer.
7. Provide timely and appropriate terminal attack control.
8. Assess mission success.
9. Transmit BDA/BHA.
10. Safely route aircraft.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Instructor, Category I or II simulator and simulator operator, or urban training area and TACP equipment.

TAC-SOAS-1120: CONDUCT TYPE 3 TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL INTEGRATING UAS FOR TARGETING OR ATTACK

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2/III: I: E: SI or SII or PE (1 UAS and 2 or 4 FW or RW): (N)

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: In a live or simulated COC environment, with a map, remote video terminal, radios, a UAS, multiple sections of FW or RW aircraft and a complex target set.

STANDARD: Using doctrinal control procedures and current TTPs, use procedural control measures to deconflict airspace, use video downlink equipment and remote real time sensor video from a UAS for targeting, and create appropriate restrictions for a simulated section of FW or RW aircraft to conduct multiple attacks during a period of time.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Locate target via remote real-time sensor video downlink from a UAS.
2. Coordinate CAS mission approval.

3. Develop 9-line attack brief utilizing a UAS as a targeting source and/or weapons employment platform.
4. Safely route aircraft.
5. Transmit attack brief to aircraft.
6. Control CAS mission in accordance with doctrine and current TTPs.
7. Provide timely and appropriate Type 3 terminal attack control.
8. Assess mission success.
9. Transmit BDA/BHA.
10. Safely route aircraft.

PREREQUISITE: TACP Course academic instruction.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Instructor, Category I or II simulator and simulator operator, or urban training area and TACP equipment.

TAC-OAS-1130: CONDUCT TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL WITH FW AIRCRAFT ON A VISUALLY MARKED TARGET

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2/I: I, R: E: A(2 FW): D

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: During a live fire exercise, with a map, compass, binoculars, and a radio, given a target in a permissive threat environment and commander's intent, with a section of FW aircraft and indirect fire support available, and tactical risk assessment requires type 1 terminal attack control.

STANDARD: Using doctrinal control procedures and current TTPs, successfully coordinate and control a section of FW aircraft on a marked target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Detect target using aided day vision and determine location via map plot with 100 meter accuracy.
2. Coordinate indirect fire mark and CAS mission approval.
3. Develop 9-Line attack brief.
4. Safely route aircraft.
5. Transmit attack brief to aircraft.
6. Control CAS mission in accordance with doctrine and current TTPs.

7. Provide accurate and timely corrections from the mark.
8. Visually acquire aircraft, assess attack geometry, and provide timely and appropriate terminal attack control; repeat as required.
9. Provide accurate and timely corrections from lead aircraft's ordnance impacts.
10. Assess mission success.
11. Transmit BDA/BHA to attacking aircraft.
12. Safely route aircraft.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP Simulation Phase Complete.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
D540 Charge, Propellant 155mm Green Bag M	2 charges per Marine
D550 Projectile, 155mm Smoke White Phosph	2 rounds per Marine
N340 Fuze, Point Detonating M739/M739A1	2 fuses per Marine
N523 Primer, Percussion M82	2 cartridges per Marine
Mk-80 series bombs	2

(Inert or Mk-76 may substitute)

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of FW CAS aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit (artillery or mortars).

TAC-OAS-1131: CONDUCT TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL WITH RW AIRCRAFT ON A VISUALLY MARKED TARGET

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2/I: I: E: A (2 RW): (N)

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: During a live fire exercise, with a map, compass, binoculars, and a radio, given a target in a permissive threat environment and commander's intent, with a section of RW aircraft and indirect fire support available, and tactical risk assessment requires type 1 terminal attack control.

STANDARD: Using doctrinal control procedures and current TTPs, successfully coordinate and control attacks from RW CAS platforms on a visually marked target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Detect target using aided day vision and determine location via map plot with 100 meter accuracy.
2. Coordinate indirect fire mark and CAS mission approval.
3. Develop 9-Line attack brief.
4. Safely route aircraft.
5. Transmit attack brief to aircraft.
6. Control CAS mission in accordance with doctrine and current TTPs.
7. Provide accurate and timely corrections from the mark.
8. Visually acquire aircraft, assess attack geometry, and provide timely and appropriate terminal attack control; repeat as required.
9. Provide accurate and timely corrections from lead aircraft's ordnance impacts.
10. Assess mission success.
11. Transmit BDA/BHA to attacking aircraft.
12. Safely route aircraft.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller
4. NTPP 3-22.5 ASTACSOP, September 2008

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
D540 Charge, Propellant 155mm Green Bag M	2 charges per Marine
D550 Projectile, 155mm Smoke White Phosph	2 rounds per Marine
N340 Fuze, Point Detonating M739/M739A1	2 fuses per Marine
N523 Primer, Percussion M82	2 cartridges per Marine
2.75" Rocket	6
20 MM (30 MM, 7.62 or .50Cal may substitute)	200

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of RW CAS aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit of artillery or mortars.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: RW captive missiles.

TAC-OAS-1132: CONDUCT TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL WHILE EMPLOYING CONTINUOUS, INTERRUPTED, OR NON-STANDARD SEAD FIRES

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2/I or II: I: E: A (2 FW OR 2 RW): (N)

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: During a live fire exercise, with a map and the TACP Suite, a restrictive threat environment, a section of FW or RW aircraft and available surface fire support.

STANDARD: Using doctrinal procedures and current TTPs, successfully coordinate suppression and a target mark from an indirect fire asset and control attacks from FW or RW CAS platforms.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Detect target using aided day vision and determine location using coupled GPS/LRF with 50m accuracy.
2. Coordinate continuous, interrupted, or non-standard SEAD with a surface indirect fire asset and CAS mission approval.
3. Develop 9-Line attack brief.
4. Safely route aircraft.
5. Transmit attack brief to aircraft.
6. Control CAS mission in accordance with doctrine and current TTPs.
7. Assess suppression effectiveness and provide accurate and timely corrections from the mark.
8. Visually acquire aircraft as required (Type 1); assess attack geometry, and provide timely and appropriate terminal attack control; repeat as required.
9. Provide accurate and timely corrections from lead aircraft's ordnance impacts.
10. Assess mission success.
11. Transmit BDA/BHA to attacking aircraft.
12. Safely route aircraft.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TAC-OAS-1130

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
D505 Projectile, 155mm Illuminating M485A	1 round per Marine
D529 Projectile, 155mm High Explosive M79	15 rounds per Marine
D540 Charge, Propellant 155mm Green Bag M	17 charges per Marine
D550 Projectile, 155mm Smoke White Phosph	1 round per Marine
N289 Fuze, Electronic Time M762A1 Sub f/N	1 fuses per Marine
N340 Fuze, Point Detonating M739/M739A1	16 fuses per Marine
N523 Primer, Percussion M82	17 cartridges per Marine

GBU-12 (16, 10, or LGTR may substitute)	2
Mk-80 series bombs (Inert or Mk-76 may substitute)	2
2.75" Rocket (HE or Inert)	6
20 MM (30 MM, 7.62 or .50 Cal may substitute)	200

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of FW or RW aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit of artillery and/or mortars.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: RW captive missiles, all FW aircraft digital CAS capable, VDL capable, advanced targeting pod/sensor capable.

TAC-OAS-1133: CONDUCT TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL IN A PERMISSIVE THREAT ENVIRONMENT UTILIZING NIGHT VISION DEVICES

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2/I or II: I, R: E: A (2 FW or 2 RW): NS

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: During a live fire exercise at night, with a map and the TACP Suite, given a section of FW or RW aircraft.

STANDARD: Using doctrinal control procedures and current TTPs, successfully coordinate and control attacks from CAS platforms on a target marked by an IR Pointer and/or LASER mark at night.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Detect target using aided night vision and determine location using coupled GPS/LRF with 50m accuracy.
2. Coordinate CAS mission approval.
3. Develop 9-Line attack brief.
4. Safely route aircraft.
5. Transmit attack brief to aircraft.
6. Control a night CAS mission in accordance with doctrine and current TTPs.
7. Optimize use of IR Pointer and/or LASER mark with doctrinal J-Laser and IR communications.
8. Visually acquire aircraft as required (Type 1); assess attack geometry, and provide timely and appropriate terminal attack control; repeat as required.
9. Provide accurate and timely corrections from lead aircraft's ordnance impacts.
10. Assess mission success.

11. Transmit BDA/BHA to attacking aircraft.
12. Safely route aircraft.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TAC-OAS-1130

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
GBU-12 (16, 10 or LGTR may substitute)	2
Mk-80 series bombs (Inert or Mk-76 may substitute)	2
2.75" Rocket (HE or Inert)	6
20 MM (30 MM, 7.62 or .50Cal may substitute)	200

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of FW or RW aircraft.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: RW captive missiles, all FW aircraft digital CAS capable, VDL capable, advanced targeting pod/sensor capable with IR pointer.

TAC-OAS-1134: CONDUCT TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL USING ADVANCED SYSTEMS

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2/I OR II: I: E: A (2 FW or 2 RW): (DI), (N)

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: During a live fire exercise, with a map and the TACP Suite, given a section of FW or RW aircraft and a tactical scenario.

STANDARD: Using doctrinal control procedures and current TTPs optimize available systems and successfully coordinate and control attacks from CAS platforms on a target that is not marked by indirect fire, IR pointer, or talk-on.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Acquire and locate target using best available means.
2. Coordinate CAS mission approval.
3. Develop 9-Line attack brief and game plan that optimizes aircraft and JTAC systems while mitigating risk.
4. Safely route aircraft.
5. Transmit attack brief to aircraft.
6. Control CAS mission in accordance with doctrine and current TTPs.
7. Visually acquire aircraft as required (Type 1); assess attack geometry, and provide timely and appropriate terminal attack control; repeat as required.
8. Provide accurate and timely corrections from lead aircraft's ordnance impacts.
9. Assess mission success.
10. Transmit BDA/BHA to attacking aircraft.
11. Safely route aircraft.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TAC-OAS-1130

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
D505 Projectile, 155mm Illuminating M485A	1 round per Marine
D529 Projectile, 155mm High Explosive M79	15 rounds per Marine
D540 Charge, Propellant 155mm Green Bag M	17 charges per Marine
D550 Projectile, 155mm Smoke White Phosph	1 round per Marine
N289 Fuze, Electronic Time M762A1 Sub f/N	1 fuses per Marine
N340 Fuze, Point Detonating M739/M739A1	16 fuses per Marine
N523 Primer, Percussion M82	17 cartridges per Marine
GBU-12 (16, 10, LGTR may substitute)	2
GBU-38 (31, 32 may substitute)	2
Mk-80 series bombs (Inert or Mk-76 may substitute)	2
2.75" Rocket (HE or Inert)	6
20 MM (30 MM, 7.62 or .50Cal may substitute)	200

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of FW or RW aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One indirect fire unit.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: RW captive missiles, all FW aircraft digital CAS capable, VDL capable, advanced targeting pod/sensor capable with IR pointer.

TAC-OAS-1135: CONDUCT OR OBSERVE TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL WITH RW AIRCRAFT USING 5-LINE ATTACK PROCEDURES

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 0: I: E: A/SI (2 RW): (N)

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: During a live fire exercise, with a map and the TACP Suite, given a section of rotary wing aircraft, and tactical risk assessment requires type 1 terminal attack control.

STANDARD: Coordinate and control RW CAS platforms on a marked or unmarked target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Detect and determine target location.
2. Coordinate CAS mission.
3. Safely route aircraft.
4. Determine best means to build aircraft awareness of friendly position.
5. Mark or identify own location and mark target by best available means.
6. Using current TTPs formulate and transmit 5-line attack brief.
7. Control CAS mission in accordance with doctrine and current TTPs.
8. Visually acquire aircraft, assess attack geometry, and provide timely and appropriate terminal attack control; repeat as required.
9. Perform hasty tactical risk assessment, identify hazards, and implement controls to prevent fratricide.
10. Assess mission success.
11. Transmit BDA/BHA to attacking aircraft.
12. Safely route aircraft.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TAC-OAS-1131

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MAWTS-1 FAC(A) Handbook

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
2.75" Rocket (HE or Inert)	6
20 MM (30 MM, 7.62 or .50Cal may substitute)	200

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of RW aircraft.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: RW captive missiles.

TAC-OAS-1136: OBSERVE A SIMULATED CASEVAC EXECUTION DEMONSTRATION

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 0: I: E: A (1 ASSAULT RW): (N)

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: During a live event, with LZ marking gear and a radio, given a simulated CASEVAC (Cherry Picker).

STANDARD: To include LZ selection, preparation, briefing, Initial Terminal Guidance (ITG), Control in the LZ, and control of aircraft out of the LZ.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assess the tactical situation to include casualty status, enemy disposition, and flight hazards to select an appropriate landing/pickup zone.
2. Deliver CASEVAC 9-line brief.
3. Deliver Landing zone brief.
4. Provide both near and far initial terminal guidance (ITG).
5. Manage airspace appropriately and control RW escorts, FW CAS platforms, and other supporting arms.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP Course academic instruction.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 4-02 Doctrine for Health Service Support in Joint Operations
2. JP 4-02.2 JTTP for Patient Movement in Joint Operations
3. MCWP 3-11.4 Helicopter Borne Operations
4. MCWP 3-24 Assault Support

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	4 grenades per Marine
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	4 grenades per Marine

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17440 Personnel/Equipment Drop Zone

AIRCRAFT: One RW aircraft.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: An LZ can be utilized to meet the training area requirement.

TAC-CHK-1190: CONDUCT CORE SKILL INTRODUCTORY EVALUATION

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2/I or II: I, R: E: A (2 FW or 2 RW): (DI), (N)

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tactical scenario, control a section of FW or RW aircraft attacks on a target.

STANDARD: Using doctrinal control procedures and current TTPs coordinate and control attacks from CAS platforms on a target as required by the tactical scenario.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Acquire and locate target.
2. Perform Tactical Risk Assessment and CAS mission planning.
3. Coordinate CAS mission approval.
4. Determine if CAS aircraft meet mission requirements.
5. Develop 9-Line attack brief and game plan that optimizes aircraft and JTAC systems while mitigating risk and accomplishing ground commander's intent.
6. Safely route aircraft.
7. Transmit attack brief to aircraft.
8. Control CAS mission in accordance with doctrine and current TTPs.
9. Visually acquire aircraft as required (Type 1); assess attack geometry, and provide timely and appropriate terminal attack control; repeat as required.
10. Provide accurate and timely corrections from lead aircraft's ordnance impacts.
11. Assess mission success.
12. Transmit BDA/BHA to attacking aircraft.
13. Safely route aircraft.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TAC-OAS-1130	TAC-OAS-1131	TAC-OAS-1133
TAC-OAS-1134	TAC-OAS-1132	

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations

3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
D505 Projectile, 155mm Illuminating M485A	1 round per Marine
D529 Projectile, 155mm High Explosive M79	15 rounds per Marine
D540 Charge, Propellant 155mm Green Bag M	17 charges per Marine
D550 Projectile, 155mm Smoke White Phosph	1 round per Marine
N289 Fuze, Electronic Time M762A1 Sub f/N	1 fuses per Marine
N340 Fuze, Point Detonating M739/M739A1	16 fuses per Marine
N523 Primer, Percussion M82	17 cartridges per Marine
GBU-12 (16,10, LGTR, may substitute)	2
GBU-38 (31, 32 may substitute)	2
Mk-80 series bombs (Inert or Mk-76 may substitute)	2
2.75" Rocket (HE or Inert)	6
20 MM (30 MM, 7.62 or .50Cal may substitute)	200

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of FW or RW aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit of artillery and or mortars.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: RW captive missiles, all FW aircraft digital CAS capable, VDL capable, advanced targeting pod/sensor capable with IR pointer.

4010. JTAC CORE SKILL 2000-2200- LEVEL EVENTS

1. General. Completion of the Core Skill Introduction training accomplished during TACP school results in certification as a JTAC. A certified JTAC must be designated by the commanding officer prior to conducting terminal attack control and the commander may convey this designation following certification by TACP school.

However, an entry level formal education is not adequate to sufficiently prepare an individual to integrate aviation in an operational environment. The core skill basic and core skill advanced training (2000-level codes) required to prepare an individual for combat is delineated in the Combat Ready Phase of training outlined below. The Combat Ready Phase consists of a progression of academic, simulation and live training events, and should be considered required training.

Combat Ready Phase. Individual JTACs are certified upon completion of TACP School as being combat qualified in accordance with the JCAS AP MOA. A Marine JTAC will not be considered combat qualified until after completion of the Combat Ready syllabus delineated in this manual. The Combat Ready Phase builds on the skills and knowledge developed during TACP School and is designed to develop the individual expertise required to be effective in combat.

Consisting of a progression of academic, simulation and live events, the Combat Ready Phase provides flexibility to combine training events where appropriate. Academic training should be conducted by the unit TACPI or Air Officer. While the focus of the academic training is on the individual JTAC, other unit members involved in fire support should be encouraged to attend.

Academic Requirements - baseline for all collective events

CAS	MAWTS-1	1.5
Weaponneering	MAWTS-1	1.0
PGM INTEGRATION	MAWTS-1	1.0
UAS OAS Employment	MAWTS-1	1.0
Aircraft and sensor capabilities	MAWTS-1	1.0

Academic Requirements - prior to TAC-SOAS-2011

Urban CAS	MAWTS-1	1.0
-----------	---------	-----

Academic Requirement - prior to TAC-SOAS-2013

Digital Avn Integration (STRIKELINK)	MAWTS-1	1.0
--------------------------------------	---------	-----

Academic Requirement - prior to TAC-SEW-2207

Electronic Warfare	MAWTS-1	1.0
--------------------	---------	-----

4011. INDEX OF JTAC CORE SKILL 2000-2200-LEVEL EVENTS

Event Code	Event	Combat Ready Phase		Page
		7502	8002	
TAC-SOAS-2001	CONTROL A DAY FW CAS MISSION WITH NON-PRECISION ORDNANCE	X	X	4-32
TAC-SOAS-2002	CONTROL A DAY RW CAS MISSION WITH NON-PRECISION ORDNANCE	X	X	4-33
TAC-SOAS-2003	CONTROL A NIGHT FW CAS MISSION WITH NON-PRECISION ORDNANCE	X	X	4-34
TAC-SOAS-2004	CONTROL A NIGHT RW CAS MISSION WITH NON-PRECISION ORDNANCE	X	X	4-35
TAC-SOAS-2005	CONTROL DELIVERY OF FW LASER-GUIDED WEAPONS ON A TARGET MARKED BY A GROUND BASED LASER	X	X	4-36
TAC-SOAS-2006	CONTROL DELIVERY OF FW INERTIALLY-AIDED MUNITIONS	X	X	4-37
TAC-SOAS-2007	CONTROL DELIVERY OF RW LASER-GUIDED WEAPONS	X	X	4-38
TAC-SOAS-2008	CONTROL FW OR RW AIRCRAFT ATTACKS USING TYPE 2 OR 3 TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL	X	X	4-39
TAC-SINT-2009	EMPLOY A JFO DURING TYPE 2 OR 3 TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL	X	X	4-40
TAC-SAER-2010	CONDUCT TARGET AREA CORRELATION USING UAS VIDEO DOWNLINK	X	X	4-41
TAC-SOAS-2011	CONTROL A DAY URBAN CAS MISSION WITH A SECTION OF CAS AIRCRAFT	X	X	4-42
TAC-SOAS-2012	CONTROL A NIGHT URBAN CAS MISSION WITH A SECTION OF CAS AIRCRAFT	X	X	4-43
TAC-SOAS-2013	CONTROL A CAS MISSION USING DIGITAL MESSAGING	X	X	4-45
TAC-AS-2101	CONDUCT A NOTIONAL CASEVAC	X	X	4-46
TAC-INTG-2102	INTEGRATE FW CAS ATTACKS WITH INDIRECT FIRE IN A RESTRICTIVE ENVIRONMENT	X	X	4-47
TAC-INTG-2103	INTEGRATE RW CAS ATTACKS WITH INDIRECT FIRE IN A RESTRICTIVE ENVIRONMENT	X	X	4-48
TAC-INTG-2104	INTEGRATE FW CAS ATTACKS WITH GROUND MANEUVER	X	X	4-50
TAC-INTG-2105	INTEGRATE RW CAS ATTACKS WITH GROUND MANEUVER	X	X	4-51
TAC-INTG-2106	EMPLOY A JFO DURING TYPE 2 OR 3 TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL	X	X	4-52
TAC-AER-2107	CONDUCT TARGET AREA CORRELATION USING VIDEO DOWNLINK	X	X	4-54
TAC-OAS-2108	CONTROL A CAS MISSION USING DIGITAL MESSAGING	X	X	4-55
TAC-SASM-2109	CONDUCT AIRSPACE MANAGEMENT	X		4-56
TAC-SINT-2110	INTEGRATE UAS WITH CAS	X		4-57
TAC-INTG-2111	CONDUCT FAC(A) INTEGRATION	X		4-58
TAC-INTG-2201	INTEGRATE MULTIPLE CAS ELEMENTS SIMULTANEOUSLY			4-59
TAC-AS-2202	CONTROL A RW OR TR AIRCRAFT INTO A MARKED LZ DURING THE DAY			4-61
TAC-AS-2203	CONTROL A RW OR TR AIRCRAFT INTO A MARKED LZ AT NIGHT			4-62
TAC-OAS-2204	CONTROL A BOMBER CAS MISSION			4-63
TAC-SOAS-2205	CONDUCT AN AC-130 CFF MISSION IN A PERMISSIVE ENVIRONMENT			4-64
TAC-SEW-2206	CONTROL AIRBORNE EW ASSETS			4-65
TAC-SEW-2207	CONTROL EW SEAD IN SUPPORT OF CAS ATTACKS IN A RESTRICTIVE ENVIRONMENT			4-66

4012. JTAC 2000-LEVEL EVENTS

TAC-SOAS-2001: CONTROL A DAY FW CAS MISSION WITH NON-PRECISION ORDNANCE

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted using simulation; reinforces skills developed during certification; focuses on brief and control of attack in accordance with doctrine and standardized procedures to employ unguided ordnance.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Simulated day environment using TACP suite targeting equipment embedded in the simulation device; section of FW CAS aircraft with unguided ordnance; indirect fires may be incorporated but are not required.

STANDARD: Plan and control a FW CAS attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable standard procedures; apply appropriate weapon to target matching, correctly determine most effective method of attack and type of control, demonstrate understanding of available ground and aircraft systems, and maintain awareness of aircraft location and mission timing; correctly determine effectiveness of the attack.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Target located within 100 meters.
2. Route and update aircraft in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
3. Receive aircraft check-in.
4. Apply aircraft and ordnance capabilities to target attack brief.
5. Develop and transmit a game plan which includes type of control, method of attack, ordnance specifications, and mission timeline.
6. Transmit target attack brief within 15 minutes of target identification.
7. Control target attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
8. Maintain mission timeline awareness.
9. Determine means to most accurately assess effects.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Simulation Facility.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: TACP radio operator; aircraft role-player; simulator operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-SOAS-2002: CONTROL A DAY RW CAS MISSION WITH NON-PRECISION ORDNANCE

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted using simulation; reinforces skills developed during certification; focuses on brief and control of attack in accordance with doctrine and standardized procedures to employ unguided ordnance.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Simulated day environment using TACP suite targeting equipment embedded in the simulation device; section of RW CAS aircraft with unguided ordnance; indirect fires may be incorporated but are not required.

STANDARD: Plan and control a RW CAS attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable standard procedures; apply appropriate weapon to target matching, correctly determine most effective method of attack and type of control, demonstrate understanding of available ground and aircraft systems, demonstrate understanding of RW employment, maintain awareness of aircraft location and mission timing; correctly determine effectiveness of the attack.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Target located within 100 meters.
2. Route and update aircraft in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
3. Receive aircraft check-in.
4. Apply aircraft and ordnance capabilities to target attack brief.
5. Develop and transmit a game plan which includes type of control, method of attack, ordnance specifications, and mission timeline.
6. Transmit target attack brief within 15 minutes of target identification.
7. Brief and control target attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
8. Maintain mission timeline awareness.
9. Determine means to most accurately assess effects.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support

2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Simulation Facility.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: TACP radio operator; aircraft role-player; simulator operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-SOAS-2003: CONTROL A NIGHT FW CAS MISSION WITH NON-PRECISION ORDNANCE

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted using simulation; reinforces skills developed during certification; focuses on brief and control of attack in accordance with doctrine and standardized procedures to employ unguided ordnance at night.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Simulated night environment using TACP suite targeting equipment embedded in the simulation device; section of FW CAS aircraft with unguided ordnance; indirect fires may be incorporated but are not required.

STANDARD: Plan and control a FW CAS attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable standard procedures; apply appropriate weapon to target matching, correctly determine most effective method of attack and type of control, demonstrate understanding of available ground and aircraft systems and their utility in the night environment, and maintain awareness of aircraft location and mission timing; correctly determine effectiveness of the attack.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Target located within 100 meters.
2. Route and update aircraft in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
3. Receive aircraft check-in.
4. Apply aircraft and ordnance capabilities to target attack brief.
5. Develop and transmit a game plan which includes type of control, method of attack, ordnance specifications, and mission timeline.
6. Transmit target attack brief within 15 minutes of target identification.
7. Control target attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
8. Maintain mission timeline awareness.
9. Determine means to most accurately assess effects.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Simulation Facility.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: TACP radio operator; aircraft role-player; simulator operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-SOAS-2004: CONTROL A NIGHT RW CAS MISSION WITH NON-PRECISION ORDNANCE

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted using simulation; reinforces skills developed during certification; focuses on brief and control of attack in accordance with doctrine and standardized procedures to employ unguided ordnance at night.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Simulated night environment using TACP suite targeting equipment embedded in the simulation device; section of RW CAS aircraft with unguided ordnance; indirect fires may be incorporated but are not required.

STANDARD: Plan and control a RW CAS attack at night in accordance with doctrine and applicable standard procedures; apply appropriate weapon to target matching, correctly determine most effective method of attack and type of control, demonstrate understanding of available ground and aircraft systems and their utility in the night environment, demonstrate understanding of RW employment, maintain awareness of aircraft location and mission timing; correctly determine effectiveness of the attack.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Target located within 100 meters.
2. Route and update aircraft in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
3. Receive aircraft check-in.
4. Apply aircraft and ordnance capabilities to target attack brief.
5. Develop and transmit a game plan which includes type of control, method of attack, ordnance specifications, and mission timeline.
6. Transmit target attack brief within 15 minutes of target identification.

7. Control target attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
8. Maintain mission timeline awareness.
9. Determine means to most accurately assess effects.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Simulation Facility.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: TACP radio operator; aircraft role-player; simulator operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-SOAS-2005: CONTROL DELIVERY OF FW LASER-GUIDED WEAPONS ON A TARGET MARKED BY A GROUND BASED LASER

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted using simulation; reinforces skills developed during certification; focuses on brief and control of attack in accordance with doctrine and standardized procedures to employ laser-guided weapons.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Simulated day environment using ground based laser and TACP suite targeting equipment embedded in the simulation device; section of FW CAS aircraft with laser-guided ordnance; indirect fires may be incorporated but are not required; ground based laser shall be used.

STANDARD: Plan and control a FW CAS attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable standard procedures; plan appropriate geometry, correctly determine laser game plan, and most effective method of attack and type of control, demonstrate understanding of available ground and aircraft systems, maintain awareness of aircraft location and mission timing; use correct laser terminology and correctly determine effectiveness of the attack.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Target located within 100 meters.

2. Route and update aircraft in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
3. Receive aircraft check-in.
4. Apply aircraft and ordnance capabilities to target attack brief.
5. Develop and transmit a game plan which includes type of control, method of attack, ordnance specifications, and mission timeline.
6. Transmit target attack brief within 15 minutes of target identification.
7. Control target attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
8. Effectively employ ground based laser in accordance with target attack brief.
9. Maintain mission timeline awareness.
10. Determine means to most accurately assess effects.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Simulation Facility.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: TACP radio operator; aircraft role-player; simulator operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-SOAS-2006: CONTROL DELIVERY OF FW INERTIALLY-AIDED MUNITIONS

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted using simulation; builds upon skills developed during certification; focus is weapon to target matching and determination of best coordinate source; variations may include BOC method of attack using dynamic targeting system, or BOT method of attack employing aircraft systems for self-derived targeting based on target area correlation conducted with terminal attack controller.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Simulated day environment using ground based laser and TACP suite targeting equipment embedded in the simulation device; section of FW CAS aircraft with inertially-aided munitions; indirect fires may be incorporated but are not required.

STANDARD: Plan and control a FW CAS attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable standard procedures; plan appropriate geometry, and most effective method of attack and type of control, demonstrate understanding of relationship between coordinate source and target location error, maintain awareness of aircraft location and mission timing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Choose coordinate source based on potential for target location error.
2. Route and update aircraft in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
3. Receive aircraft check-in.
4. Apply aircraft and ordnance capabilities to target attack brief.
5. Develop and transmit a game plan which includes type of control, method of attack, ordnance specifications, and mission timeline.
6. Transmit target attack brief within 15 minutes of target identification.
7. Control target attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
8. Maintain mission timeline awareness.
9. Determine means to most accurately assess effects.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Simulation Facility; Dynamic targeting equipment (such as PSS-SOF).

UNITS/PERSONNEL: TACP radio operator; aircraft role-player; simulator operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-SOAS-2007: CONTROL DELIVERY OF RW LASER-GUIDED WEAPONS

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted using simulation; reinforces skills developed during certification; focuses on brief and control of attack in accordance with doctrine and standardized procedures to employ laser-guided weapons.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Simulated day environment using ground based laser and TACP suite targeting equipment embedded in the simulation device; section of RW CAS

aircraft with laser-guided ordnance; indirect fires may be incorporated but are not required; ground based laser shall be used.

STANDARD: Plan and control a RW CAS attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable standard procedures; plan appropriate geometry, correctly determine laser game plan, and most effective method of attack and type of control, demonstrate understanding of available ground and aircraft systems, maintain awareness of aircraft location and mission timing; use correct laser terminology and correctly determine effectiveness of the attack.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Target located within 100 meters.
2. Route and update aircraft in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
3. Receive aircraft check-in.
4. Apply aircraft and ordnance capabilities to target attack brief.
5. Develop and transmit a game plan which includes type of control, method of attack, ordnance specifications, and mission timeline.
6. Transmit target attack brief within 15 minutes of target identification.
7. Control target attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
8. Effectively employ ground based laser in accordance with target attack brief.
9. Maintain mission timeline awareness.
10. Determine means to most accurately assess effects.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Simulation Facility.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: TACP radio operator; aircraft role-player; simulator operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-SOAS-2008: CONTROL FW OR RW AIRCRAFT ATTACKS USING TYPE 2 OR 3 TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted using simulation and in conjunction with other 2000-level SOAS events; focuses on brief and control of attack in accordance with doctrine and standardized procedures for appropriate type of control; consider multiple exposures in order to reinforce distinctions between Type 2 and 3 terminal attack control.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Simulated day or night environment using TACP suite targeting equipment embedded in the simulation device; section of CAS aircraft; situation unsuitable for Type 1 terminal attack control; indirect fires may be incorporated but are not required.

STANDARD: Choose between Type 2 and 3 terminal attack controls for situation presented; control CAS attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable standard procedures; demonstrate understanding of distinctions among the types of terminal attack control and identify the requirements for each.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine type of control to be conducted.
2. Develop and transmit a game plan which includes type of control, method of attack, ordnance specifications, and mission timeline.
3. Brief and control target attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures governing type of control selected.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Simulation Facility.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: TACP radio operator; aircraft role-player; simulator operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-SINT-2009: EMPLOY A JFO DURING TYPE 2 OR 3 TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted live or with simulation; should be conducted in conjunction with another 2000-level or collective code; focuses on brief and control of CAS while employing JFO in accordance with doctrine and standardized procedures; consider multiple exposures in order to reinforce distinctions between Type 2 and 3 terminal attack control.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: JFO in a position to locate and observe the target; section of CAS aircraft; situation unsuitable for Type 1 terminal attack control; indirect fires may be incorporated but are not required.

STANDARD: Choose between Type 2 and 3 terminal attack controls for situation presented; control CAS attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable standard procedures; employ JFO to determine or confirm target location; employ JFO to conduct weapon terminal guidance as applicable; employ JFO to observe and assess impacts.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish communication with JFO.
2. Determine type of control to be conducted.
3. Verify JFO-determined target location corresponds with expected target area.
4. Develop and transmit a game plan which includes type of control, method of attack, ordnance specifications, and mission timeline.
5. Control target attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures governing type of control selected.
6. Employ JFO to assess effectiveness of CAS attack and/or provide corrections if required.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Simulation Facility.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: TACP radio operator; aircraft role-player; simulator operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-SAER-2010: CONDUCT TARGET AREA CORRELATION USING UAS VIDEO DOWNLINK

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted using simulation; may be conducted in conjunction with another 2000-level SOAS code; builds upon understanding of video downlink and UAS integration developed during certification; using simulated UAS video downlink embedded in simulation system, determine accurate target location; plot target on area map.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Simulated environment using UAS feed embedded in the simulation device.

STANDARD: Using simulated UAS feed, locate, identify and accurately plot the target using available systems.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish video downlink using simulation device.
2. Identify target using video downlink.
3. Determine target location using map plot and available systems.
4. If CAS attack is to be conducted, develop and issue target attack brief.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Simulation Facility.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: TACP radio operator; aircraft role-player; UAS operator; simulator operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-SOAS-2011: CONTROL A DAY URBAN CAS MISSION WITH A SECTION OF CAS AIRCRAFT

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted using simulation and in conjunction with other 2000-level SOAS codes; builds upon skills developed during certification; focus is weapon to target matching, considerations unique to urban CAS; variations may include BOC method of attack using dynamic targeting system, or BOT method of attack employing aircraft systems for self-derived targeting based on target area correlation conducted with terminal attack controller.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Simulated day urban environment using TACP suite equipment embedded in the simulation device and dynamic targeting systems; section of FW or RW CAS aircraft.

STANDARD: Plan and control an urban CAS attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable standard procedures; plan appropriate geometry; determine most appropriate method of attack and type of control, demonstrate understanding of urban environment, consider collateral effects; conduct effective target area correlation if method of attack is BOT.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine best coordinate source based on potential for target location error.
2. Route and update aircraft in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
3. Receive aircraft check-in.
4. Apply aircraft and ordnance capabilities to target attack brief and urban considerations.
5. Develop and transmit a game plan which includes type of control, method of attack, ordnance specifications, and mission timeline.
6. Transmit target attack brief within 15 minutes of target identification.
7. Conduct effective target area correlation as appropriate.
8. Consider collateral effects.
9. Control target attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
10. Effectively employ ground based laser in accordance with target attack brief if applicable.
11. Maintain mission timeline awareness.
12. Determine means to most accurately assess effects.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Simulation Facility; Dynamic targeting equipment (such as PSS-SOF).

UNITS/PERSONNEL: TACP radio operator; aircraft role-player; simulator operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-SOAS-2012: CONTROL A NIGHT URBAN CAS MISSION WITH A SECTION OF CAS AIRCRAFT

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted using simulation and in conjunction with other 2000-level SOAS codes; builds upon skills developed during certification; focus is weapon to target matching and considerations unique to night urban CAS; variations may include BOC method of attack using dynamic targeting system, or BOT method of attack employing aircraft systems for self-derived targeting based on target area correlation conducted with terminal attack controller.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Simulated night urban environment using TACP suite equipment embedded in the simulation device, and dynamic targeting system; section of FW or RW CAS aircraft.

STANDARD: Plan and control a night urban CAS attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable standard procedures; plan appropriate geometry; determine most appropriate method of attack and type of control, demonstrate understanding of urban environment, consider collateral effects; conduct effective target area correlation if method of attack is BOT.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine best coordinate source based on potential for target location error.
2. Route and update aircraft in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
3. Receive aircraft check-in.
4. Apply aircraft and ordnance capabilities to target attack brief and urban considerations.
5. Develop and transmit a game plan which includes type of control, method of attack, ordnance specifications, and mission timeline.
6. Transmit target attack brief within 15 minutes of target identification.
7. Conduct effective target area correlation as appropriate.
8. Consider collateral effects.
9. Control target attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
10. Effectively employ ground based laser or IR marker in accordance with target attack brief if applicable.
11. Maintain mission timeline awareness.
12. Determine means to most accurately assess effects.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.
TAC-SOAS-2011

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Simulation Facility; Dynamic targeting equipment (such as PSS-SOF).

UNITS/PERSONNEL: TACP radio operator; aircraft role-player; simulator operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-SOAS-2013: CONTROL A CAS MISSION USING DIGITAL MESSAGING

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted using simulation; may be conducted in conjunction with another 2000-level SOAS code; builds upon understanding developed during certification; focus system set-up full digital thread interaction with CAS aircraft; variations may include BOC method of attack using dynamic targeting system, or BOT method of attack employing aircraft systems for self-derived targeting based on initial target information transmitted digitally.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Simulated environment using TACP suite equipment embedded in the simulation device, StrikeLink DACAS system, and dynamic targeting system; section of digitally capable CAS aircraft.

STANDARD: Correctly load StrikeLink ground and air networks; develop and transmit a digital target attack brief on an air and ground net; plan appropriate geometry; conduct digital negotiation of the target attack brief; activate APTD; digitally authorize weapons employment or abort the CAS attack.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Digitally receive on-station report.
2. Add and activate flight.
3. Apply aircraft and ordnance capabilities to target attack brief.
4. Develop and transmit a digital target attack brief within 15 minutes of target identification.
5. Transmit target attack brief on ground net.
6. Transmit target attack brief on air net.
7. Activate APTD.
8. Digitally authorize weapons employment or abort CAS attack.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support

2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Simulation Facility; Dynamic targeting equipment (such as PSS-SOF).

UNITS/PERSONNEL: TACP radio operator; aircraft role-player; simulator operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-AS-2101: CONDUCT A NOTIONAL CASEVAC

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted using live aircraft; focuses on LZ selection, CASEVAC request procedures and terminal guidance of aircraft in accordance with doctrine and standardized procedures.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: In a day or night environment, given a live RW or TR asset, an area suitable for selection as a landing zone, a simulated casualty, and TACP equipment.

STANDARD: Establish a landing zone suitable for applicable aircraft; provide request for CASEVAC in accordance with appropriate format; provide LZ brief in accordance with applicable standards; conduct far and near terminal guidance of aircraft using visual signals and voice communications.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine landing zone location.
2. Submit request for CASEVAC aircraft.
3. Prepare landing zone brief.
4. Transmit updated casualty information in accordance with applicable procedures.
5. Prepare visual signals as appropriate.
6. Control aircraft into marked landing zone.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	4 grenades per Marine
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	4 grenades per Marine

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17440 Personnel/Equipment Drop Zone

AIRCRAFT: One RW or TR aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: TACP radio operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-INTG-2102: INTEGRATE FW CAS ATTACKS WITH INDIRECT FIRE IN A RESTRICTIVE ENVIRONMENT

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted during live execution in conjunction with collective codes (3000-8000 level); may also be conducted in conjunction with other 2000-level codes; focus is air delivered and indirect fires integration where a credible threat to CAS aircraft is present.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Credible threat to FW CAS aircraft must be honored throughout; fires integration required to suppress the threat and/or mark the target.

STANDARD: Integrate FW CAS and indirect fire assets; plan appropriate geometry; maintain awareness of asset status and attack timeline; conduct effective target area correlation if method of attack is BOT.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine best coordinate source based on potential for target location error.
2. Determine requirement for indirect fire in accordance with the situation.
3. Determine and select most effective method for integration of air and indirect fires.
4. Route and update aircraft in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
5. Receive aircraft check-in.
6. Apply aircraft and ordnance capabilities to target attack brief and tactical situation.
7. Develop and transmit a game plan which includes type of control, method of attack, ordnance specifications, SEAD plan, and mission timeline.
8. Transmit target attack brief within 15 minutes of target identification.

9. Conduct effective target area correlation as appropriate.
10. Control target attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
11. Maintain mission timeline awareness.
12. Provide threat calls to CAS aircraft as appropriate throughout the attack.
13. Accurately assess effects of CAS and indirect fires.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.
TAC-SOAS-2003 TAC-SOAS-2001 TAC-SOAS-2006
TAC-SOAS-2005

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
D540 Charge, Propellant 155mm Green Bag M	2 charges per Marine
D550 Projectile, 155mm Smoke White Phosph	2 rounds per Marine
N340 Fuze, Point Detonating M739/M739A1	2 fuses per Marine
N523 Primer, Percussion M82	2 cartridges per Marine
Mk-80 series bombs, PGMs or equivalent	2
20mm or 25mm	250

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of FW aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit (artillery or mortars); TACP radio operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-INTG-2103: INTEGRATE RW CAS ATTACKS WITH INDIRECT FIRE IN A RESTRICTIVE ENVIRONMENT

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted during live execution in conjunction with collective codes (3000-8000 level); may also be conducted in conjunction with other 2000-level codes; focus is air delivered and indirect fires integration where a credible threat to CAS aircraft is present.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Credible threat to RW CAS aircraft must be honored throughout; fires integration required to suppress the threat and/or mark the target.

STANDARD: Integrate RW CAS and indirect fire assets; plan appropriate geometry; maintain awareness of asset status and attack timeline; conduct effective target area correlation if method of attack is BOT.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine best coordinate source based on potential for target location error.
2. Determine requirement for indirect fire in accordance with the situation.
3. Determine and select most effective method for integration of air and indirect fires.
4. Route and update aircraft in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
5. Receive aircraft check-in.
6. Apply aircraft and ordnance capabilities to target attack brief and tactical situation.
7. Develop and transmit a game plan which includes type of control, method of attack, ordnance specifications, SEAD plan and mission timeline.
8. Transmit target attack brief within 15 minutes of target identification.
9. Conduct effective target area correlation as appropriate.
10. Control target attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
11. Maintain mission timeline awareness.
12. Provide threat calls to CAS aircraft as appropriate throughout the attack.
13. Accurately assess effects of CAS and indirect fires.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.
TAC-SOAS-2002 TAC-SOAS-2007 TAC-SOAS-2004

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
D540 Charge, Propellant 155mm Green Bag M	2 charges per Marine
D550 Projectile, 155mm Smoke White Phosph	2 rounds per Marine
N340 Fuze, Point Detonating M739/M739A1	2 fuses per Marine
N523 Primer, Percussion M82	2 cartridges per Marine
Rockets or PGMs	2
20mm, 7.62mm or 50 cal	250

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of RW aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit (artillery or mortars); TACP radio operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-INTG-2104: INTEGRATE FW CAS ATTACKS WITH GROUND MANEUVER

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted during live execution in conjunction with collective codes (3000-8000-level); may also be conducted in conjunction with other 2000-level codes; focus is integration of air delivered fires with ground maneuver; indirect fire may be employed.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Actual or simulated company or larger maneuver force; CAS required by the maneuver force.

STANDARD: Effective integration of FW CAS with maneuvering ground force; plan appropriate geometry; maintain awareness of asset status and attack timeline; maintain awareness of maneuver force location relative to CAS targets; conduct effective target area correlation if method of attack is BOT.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine best coordinate source based on potential for target location error.
2. Determine requirement for indirect fire in accordance with the situation.
3. Route and update aircraft in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
4. Receive aircraft check-in.
5. Apply aircraft and ordnance capabilities to target attack brief and tactical situation.
6. Ensure synchronization of CAS and maneuver timelines.
7. Develop and transmit a game plan which includes type of control, method of attack, ordnance specifications, and mission timeline.
8. Transmit target attack brief within 15 minutes of target identification.
9. Conduct effective target area correlation as appropriate.
10. Control target attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
11. Maintain awareness of maneuver force location.
12. Provide threat calls to CAS aircraft as appropriate throughout the attack.
13. Accurately assess effects of CAS.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.

TAC-INTG-2102

TAC-SOAS-2001

TAC-SOAS-2006

TAC-SOAS-2005

TAC-SOAS-2003

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
D540 Charge, Propellant 155mm Green Bag M	2 charges per Marine
D550 Projectile, 155mm Smoke White Phosph	2 rounds per Marine
N340 Fuze, Point Detonating M739/M739A1	2 fuses per Marine
N523 Primer, Percussion M82	2 cartridges per Marine
Mk-80 series bombs, PGMs or equivalent	2
20mm or 25mm	250

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of FW aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit (artillery or mortars); TACP radio operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-INTG-2105: INTEGRATE RW CAS ATTACKS WITH GROUND MANEUVER

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted during live execution in conjunction with collective codes (3000-8000-level); may also be conducted in conjunction with other 2000-level codes; focus is integration of air delivered fires with ground maneuver; indirect fire may be employed.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Actual or simulated company or larger maneuver force; CAS required by the maneuver force.

STANDARD: Effective integration of RW CAS with maneuvering ground force; plan appropriate geometry; maintain awareness of asset status and attack timeline; maintain awareness of maneuver force location relative to CAS targets; conduct effective target area correlation if method of attack is BOT.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine best coordinate source based on potential for target location error.
2. Determine requirement for indirect fire in accordance with the situation.
3. Route and update aircraft in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
4. Receive aircraft check-in.
5. Apply aircraft and ordnance capabilities to target attack brief and tactical situation.

6. Ensure synchronization of CAS and maneuver timelines.
7. Develop and transmit a game plan which includes type of control, method of attack, ordnance specifications, and mission timeline.
8. Transmit target attack brief within 15 minutes of target identification.
9. Conduct effective target area correlation as appropriate.
10. Control target attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
11. Maintain awareness of maneuver force location.
12. Keep maneuver force informed of the status of CAS attack(s).
13. Provide threat calls to CAS aircraft as appropriate throughout the attack.
14. Accurately assess effects of CAS.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.
TAC-INTG-2103 TAC-SOAS-2002 TAC-SOAS-2007
TAC-SOAS-2004

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
D540 Charge, Propellant 155mm Green Bag M	2 charges per Marine
D550 Projectile, 155mm Smoke White Phosph	2 rounds per Marine
N340 Fuze, Point Detonating M739/M739A1	2 fuses per Marine
N523 Primer, Percussion M82	2 cartridges per Marine
Rockets or PGMS	2
20mm, 7.62mm or 50 cal	250

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of RW aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit (artillery or mortars); TACP radio operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-INTG-2106: EMPLOY A JFO DURING TYPE 2 OR 3 TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted during live execution; should be conducted in conjunction with another 2000-level or collective code; focuses on brief and control of CAS while employing JFO in accordance with doctrine and standardized procedures; consider multiple exposures in order to reinforce distinctions between Type 2 and 3 terminal attack control.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETTS: FAC, JFO, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: JFO in a position to locate and observe the target; section of CAS aircraft; situation unsuitable for Type 1 terminal attack control; indirect fires may be incorporated but are not required.

STANDARD: Choose between Type 2 and 3 terminal attack controls for situation presented; control CAS attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable standard procedures; employ JFO to determine or confirm target location; employ JFO to conduct weapon terminal guidance as applicable; employ JFO to observe and assess impacts.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish communication with JFO.
2. Determine type of control to be conducted.
3. Verify JFO-determined target location corresponds with expected target area.
4. Develop and transmit a game plan which includes type of control, method of attack, ordnance specifications, and mission timeline.
5. Control target attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures governing type of control selected.
6. Employ JFO to assess effectiveness of CAS attack.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.
TAC-SOAS-2008 TAC-SINT-2009

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
D540 Charge, Propellant 155mm Green Bag M	2 charges per Marine
D550 Projectile, 155mm Smoke White Phosph	2 rounds per Marine
N340 Fuze, Point Detonating M739/M739A1	2 fuses per Marine
N523 Primer, Percussion M82	2 cartridges per Marine
Mk-80 series bombs, rockets or PGMS	2
20mm, 25mm, 7.62mm or 50 cal	250

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of RW or FW aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit (artillery or mortars); TACP radio operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-AER-2107: CONDUCT TARGET AREA CORRELATION USING VIDEO DOWNLINK

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted with live aircraft; should be conducted in conjunction with another 2000-level or collective code; builds upon understanding of video downlink and UAS integration developed during certification; using video downlink, locate and conduct effective correlation of the correct target with supporting CAS aircraft.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Live aircraft transmitting video feed; sensor-significant target; video downlink system employed by the terminal attack controller.

STANDARD: Using video downlink, locate and identify the target and conduct correlation with supporting CAS aircraft to ensure the correct target is being attacked.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Configure video downlink system.
2. Receive video downlink from transmitting platform.
3. Identify target using video downlink.
4. Determine target location using map plot and available systems.
5. If CAS attack is to be conducted, develop and issue target attack brief.
6. After target attack brief and required read backs, conduct target area correlation using video downlink.
7. Verify that target identified by aircraft sensor corresponds with expected target location.
8. As applicable, conduct BHA and/or BDA using video downlink, following CAS attack.
9. Compare desired affects with assessed affects.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.
TAC-SOAS-2008 TAC-SAER-2010

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of FW aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: TACP radio operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-OAS-2108: CONTROL A CAS MISSION USING DIGITAL MESSAGING

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted using live aircraft; may be conducted in conjunction with another 2000-level INT code; builds upon understanding of digital integration developed during certification; focus on system set-up and full digital thread interaction with CAS aircraft; variations may include BOC method of attack using dynamic targeting system, or BOT method of attack employing aircraft systems for self-derived targeting based on initial target information transmitted digitally.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a StrikeLink DACAS system, and dynamic targeting system; section of digitally capable CAS aircraft.

STANDARD: Correctly load StrikeLink ground and air networks; develop and transmit a digital target attack brief on an air and ground net; plan appropriate geometry; conduct digital negotiation of the target attack brief; activate APTD; digitally authorize weapons employment or abort the CAS attack.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Digitally request on-station report.
2. Add and activate flight.
3. Apply aircraft and ordnance capabilities to target attack brief.
4. Develop and transmit a digital target attack brief within 15 minutes of target identification.
5. Transmit target attack brief on ground net.
6. Transmit target attack brief on air net.
7. Activate APTD.
8. Digitally authorize weapons employment or abort CAS attack.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.
TAC-SOAS-2205

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
D540 Charge, Propellant 155mm Green Bag M	2 charges per Marine
D550 Projectile, 155mm Smoke White Phosph	2 rounds per Marine
N340 Fuze, Point Detonating M739/M739A1	2 fuses per Marine
N523 Primer, Percussion M82	2 cartridges per Marine
Mk-80 series bombs, PGMs or equivalent	2
20mm or 25mm	250

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of FW aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit (artillery or mortars); TACP radio operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-SASM-2109: CONDUCT AIRSPACE MANAGEMENT

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted using simulation; should be conducted in conjunction with another 2000-level SOAS code; develops skills required within the TACP to manage airspace; plan, receive and route objective area aircraft in accordance with applicable coordination measures and established procedures; communicate with higher and adjacent units as appropriate.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a simulated environment using UAS feed embedded in the simulation device.

STANDARD: Using simulated UAS feed, locate and identify the target and conduct correlation with at least two sections of supporting CAS aircraft to ensure the correct target is being attacked; coordinate the movement of all aircraft with higher and adjacent units on the appropriate nets in accordance with doctrine and standardized procedures.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish video downlink using simulation device.
2. Identify target using video downlink.
3. Determine target location using map plot and available systems.
4. If CAS attack is to be conducted, develop and issue target attack brief.
5. After target attack brief and required read backs, conduct target area correlation using video downlink.

6. Verify that target identified by aircraft sensor corresponds with expected target location.
7. As applicable, conduct BHA and/or BDA using video downlink, following CAS attack.
8. Compare desired effects with assessed effects.
9. Maintain awareness throughout of location and status of each aircraft element.
10. Communicate with higher, adjacent and subordinate agencies as required for safe and effective management of air space.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.
TAC-SAER-2010

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Simulation Facility.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: TACP radio operator; aircraft role-player; UAS operator; simulator operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-SINT-2110: INTEGRATE UAS WITH CAS

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted with simulation; should be conducted in conjunction with another 2000-level code; builds upon understanding of video downlink and UAS integration developed during certification; employ the UAS sensor to locate and identify the target, and conduct effective correlation of the target with supporting CAS aircraft; employ the UAS for BHA/BDA; deconflict CAS aircraft and UAS in objective area airspace.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a UAS and CAS aircraft supporting the same terminal attack controller in a single objective area.

STANDARD: Effectively integrate UAS capabilities to enhance CAS execution; maintain awareness of CAS aircraft and UAS location and ensure deconfliction.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish communication with UAS.
2. Identify target and determine target location using map plot and available systems.
3. Manage objective area air space to enable simultaneous employment of UAS and CAS aircraft.
4. Develop and issue target attack brief.
5. After target attack brief and required read backs, conduct target area correlation as applicable.
6. Employ UAS IR pointer and/or Laser to provide a mark or TGO if appropriate.
7. Maintain awareness of CAS aircraft and UAS location and timeline.
8. As applicable, conduct BHA and/or BDA using UAS, following CAS attack.
9. Compare desired affects with assessed affects.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.
TAC-SAER-2010

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Simulation Facility.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: TACP radio operator; aircraft role-player; UAS operator; simulator operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-INTG-2111: CONDUCT FAC(A) INTEGRATION

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted during live execution; develops understanding of FAC(A) capability; focus is battle handover procedures, mission approval process, and employment considerations.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: One or more CAS elements; one FW or RW FAC(A) capable aircraft; supported unit requires FAC(A).

STANDARD: Employ FAC(A) as an extension of unit TACP; demonstrate understanding of the FAC(A) functions; conduct complete battle handover with

FAC(A) in accordance with applicable standard procedures; approve, modify or deny FAC(A) missions.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Receive aircraft check-in.
2. Develop and transmit battle handover to the FAC(A).
3. Approve, modify or deny FAC(A) gameplan and missions.
4. Maintain awareness of ongoing FAC(A) missions.
5. Maintain mission timeline awareness.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.
TAC-SOAS-2002 TAC-SOAS-2001 TAC-SASM-2109

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
D540 Charge, Propellant 155mm Green Bag M	2 charges per Marine
D550 Projectile, 155mm Smoke White Phosph	2 rounds per Marine
N340 Fuze, Point Detonating M739/M739A1	2 fuses per Marine
N523 Primer, Percussion M82	2 cartridges per Marine
Mk-80 series bombs, rockets or PGMs	4
20mm, 25mm, 7.62mm or 50 cal	500

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of RW or FW aircraft; one RW or FW FAC(A) capable aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit (artillery or mortars); TACP radio operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-INTG-2201: INTEGRATE MULTIPLE CAS ELEMENTS SIMULTANEOUSLY

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted during live execution in conjunction with collective codes (3000-8000 level); may also be conducted in conjunction with other 2000-level codes; focus is integration of multiple CAS elements in sector; indirect fire may be employed.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Multiple elements of CAS aircraft supporting the same terminal attack controller; attack types may include sectored-simultaneous, sectored-sequential, or combined-sequential; dissimilar aircraft types and indirect fires recommended but not required.

STANDARD: Effective and safe integration of multiple CAS elements applying applicable doctrine and standardization; plan appropriate geometry; maintain awareness of asset status and attack timeline; maintain awareness of target location; effective weapon to target matching and sensor employment; conduct effective target area correlation if method of attack is BOT.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine best coordinate sources based on potential for target location error.
2. Route and update aircraft in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
3. Receive element check-in.
4. Apply aircraft and ordnance capabilities to target attack briefs and tactical situation.
5. Determine appropriate methods of attack and types of terminal attack control.
6. Manage the doctrinal net(s) to ensure effective communication flow between all elements.
7. Develop and transmit game plans for each element which include type of control, method of attack, ordnance specifications, and mission timeline.
8. Transmit target attack briefs within 15 minutes of target identification.
9. Conduct effective target area correlation as appropriate.
10. Control target attacks in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
11. Maintain awareness of each CAS element.
12. Provide threat calls to CAS aircraft as appropriate throughout the attack.
13. Accurately assess effects of CAS.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
D540 Charge, Propellant 155mm Green Bag M	2 charges per Marine
D550 Projectile, 155mm Smoke White Phosph	2 rounds per Marine
N340 Fuze, Point Detonating M739/M739A1	2 fuses per Marine
N523 Primer, Percussion M82	2 cartridges per Marine
Mk-80 series bombs, rockets or PGMS	4
20mm, 25mm, 7.62mm or 50 cal	500

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: Two sections of OAS aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit (artillery or mortars); TACP radio operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-AS-2202: CONTROL A RW OR TR AIRCRAFT INTO A MARKED LZ DURING THE DAY

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted using live aircraft; focuses on landing zone selection, marking and briefing in accordance with doctrine and standardized procedures.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a RW or TR asset, an area suitable for selection as a landing zone, live or simulated passengers or cargo and TACP equipment.

STANDARD: Establish a landing zone suitable for applicable aircraft; provide LZ brief in accordance with applicable standards; conduct far and near terminal guidance of aircraft using visual signals and voice communications.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine landing zone location.
2. Prepare landing zone brief.
3. Prepare visual signals as appropriate.
4. Transmit landing zone brief in accordance with applicable standards.
5. Control aircraft into marked landing zone.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	4 grenades per Marine
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	4 grenades per group

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17440 Personnel/Equipment Drop Zone

AIRCRAFT: One RW or TR aircraft.

TAC-OAS-2204: CONTROL A BOMBER CAS MISSION

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to develop, during live execution, the skills required for employing joint bomber platforms; builds upon understanding of bomber capabilities and limitations introduced during certification; focus on weapon to target matching, geometry, and unique timeline considerations; variations may include BOC method of attack using dynamic targeting system, or BOT method of attack employing aircraft systems for self-derived targeting.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: One bomber with live or simulated ordnance; target set appropriate for bomber capabilities.

STANDARD: Demonstrate understanding of applicable bomber capabilities and limitations; apply effective and appropriate weapon to target matching; brief and control bomber CAS attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Receive aircraft check-in.
2. Develop and transmit a game plan suitable for bomber employment.
3. Transmit target attack brief within 15 minutes of target identification.
4. Conduct effective target area correlation as appropriate.
5. Consider collateral effects.
6. Control target attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
7. Maintain mission timeline awareness.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
D540 Charge, Propellant 155mm Green Bag M	2 charges per Marine
D550 Projectile, 155mm Smoke White Phosph	2 rounds per Marine
N340 Fuze, Point Detonating M739/M739A1	2 fuses per Marine
N523 Primer, Percussion M82	2 cartridges per Marine
Mk-80 series bombs, PGMs or equivalent	2

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One bomber aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit (artillery or mortars); TACP radio operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-SOAS-2205: CONDUCT AN AC-130 CFF MISSION IN A PERMISSIVE ENVIRONMENT

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted using simulation; develops skills required to employ AC-130; focus is familiarity with call for fire procedures, understanding of geometry of fires, and weapon effects.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Simulated night environment using TACP suite equipment embedded in the simulation device, and dynamic targeting system; single AC-130 aircraft.

STANDARD: Plan and control an AC-130 CAS attack at night in accordance with doctrine and applicable standard procedures; plan appropriate geometry; demonstrate understanding of AC-130 employment considerations, consider collateral effects; conduct effective target area correlation using available aircraft and TACP systems.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Receive aircraft check-in.
2. Develop and transmit a game plan suitable for AC-130 employment.
3. Transmit AC-130 call for fire within 15 minutes of target identification.
4. Conduct effective target area correlation as appropriate.
5. Consider collateral effects.
6. Brief and control target attack in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
7. Maintain mission timeline awareness.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Simulation Facility; Dynamic targeting equipment (such as PSS-SOF).

UNITS/PERSONNEL: TACP radio operator; aircraft role-player; simulator operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-SEW-2206: CONTROL AIRBORNE EW ASSETS

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted using simulation; may be conducted in conjunction with another 2000-level SOAS code; builds upon understanding of electronic warfare developed during certification; based on mission analysis focus on EW tasks specific to anticipated mission.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Simulated environment with multiple electro-magnetic threats using TACP suite equipment embedded in the simulation device, and simulated comm paths for EW support; EW aircraft.

STANDARD: Based on assessed threat, determine EW tasks that are required; submit appropriate requests for support; coordinate with supporting aircraft to accomplish required EW tasks.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify applicable EW request procedures and documentation.
2. Submit EW request.
3. Coordinate with supporting aircraft to target/counter multiple threats that supports the commander's intent.
4. Transmit updated EW requirements.
5. Determine EW effectiveness.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Simulation Facility.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: TACP radio operator; aircraft role-player; simulator operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes; EWO or EW SME.

TAC-SEW-2207: CONTROL EW SEAD IN SUPPORT OF CAS ATTACKS IN A RESTRICTIVE ENVIRONMENT

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted using simulation; may be conducted in conjunction with another 2000-level SOAS code; builds upon understanding of electronic warfare developed during certification; based on mission analysis focus on tasks required to support CAS attacks where a EW threat exists.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Simulated restrictive threat environment using TACP suite equipment embedded in the simulation device, and simulated comm paths for EW support of CAS; EW and CAS aircraft.

STANDARD: Based on assessed threat, determine EW tasks that are required; submit appropriate requests for support; coordinate with supporting aircraft to accomplish required EW task(s).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify applicable EW request procedures and documentation.
2. Submit EW request.
3. Coordinate the electronic attack of RF threat system(s) with supporting EW aircraft.
4. Coordinate with CAS aircraft to ensure EW support corresponds with CAS timelines.
5. Assess EW effectiveness.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TACP School complete and Combat Ready Phase academics.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Simulation Facility.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: TACP radio operator; aircraft role-player; simulator operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes; EWO or EW SME

4013. INSTRUCTOR TRAINING EVENTS

1. JTAC Evaluator

a. Purpose. Prepare and evaluate the prospective JTAC Evaluator (JTACE).

b. General

(1) Prospective JTACEs shall be SNCOs or Officers qualified as JTACs, with a minimum of 1 year of operational experience as a JTAC and recommended by the commanding officer. JTAC operational experience may be replaced with 1 year of proficiency as a FAC(A).

(2) Completion of the TAC-DESG-2610 event meets the requirements for designation as a JTACE. At the discretion of the commanding officer, a letter designating the JTAC as a JTACE may be placed in the JTAC's IPR.

c. Academic Training. The prospective JTACE must complete an academic support package provided by MAWTS-1 prior to the commencement of the field training syllabus.

d. Standardization. JTACEs requiring an 18 month standardization evaluation shall coordinate with a TACPI to observe and evaluate the JTACE's evaluated event.

e. Former TACPI Update. Any formerly designated TACPI from previous versions of the TACP T&R Manual who has maintained their currency is eligible to be designated as a JTACE. At the discretion of the commanding officer, a letter designating the JTAC as a JTACE may be placed in the JTAC's IPR.

f. Field and Simulator Training

2. JTAC Instructor

a. Purpose. Prepare and evaluate prospective JTACIs.

b. General

(1) Prospective JTACIs shall be qualified JTACs, with a minimum of 1 year of operational experience and recommended by commanding officer. JTAC operational experience may be replaced with 1 year of proficiency as a FAC(A).

(2) Completion of the TAC-DESG-2630 event meets the requirements for designation as a JTACI. At the discretion of the commanding officer, a letter designating the JTAC as a JTACI may be placed in the JTAC's IPR.

(3) Prospective JTACIs will be evaluated by qualified and proficient JTACIs at the respective EWTG.

c. Academic Training. The prospective JTACI must attend an EWTG JTACI academic package prior to the commencement of the field training syllabus.

d. Standardization. Prospective JTACIs shall ensure they are exposed to one of all the following during the JTACI syllabus: Fixed Wing, Rotary Wing, Night, and SEAD missions.

d. Field and Simulator Training

3. TACP Instructor

a. Purpose. Prepare and evaluate prospective TACPIs.

b. General

(1) Prospective TACPIs shall be qualified FACs/JTACs, SNCO or officer, attending the MAWTS-1 Air Officer Course.

(2) Completion of the TAC-DESG-2620 event meets the requirements for designation as a TACPI. At the discretion of the MAWTS-1 Commanding Officer, a letter certifying the JTAC as a TACPI may be placed in the JTAC's IPR.

(3) Prospective TACPIs will be evaluated by a MAWTS-1 Air Officer Instructor.

c. Academic Training. The prospective TACPI must complete the Air Officer Course academic syllabus as listed in the WTI course catalog.

d. Standardization. Prospective TACPIs shall successfully complete the simulation and live events listed in the Air Officer Course Evolution syllabus as listed in the WTI course catalog.

e. Field and Simulator Training

4014. INDEX OF INSTRUCTOR TRAINING 2500-LEVEL EVENTS

Event Code	Event	Page
	JTAC Evaluator	
TAC-IUT-2510	CONDUCT AN ACADEMIC PERIOD OF INSTRUCTION	4-71
TAC-IUT-2511	CONTROL FW AND RW CAS ASSETS SIMULTANEOUSLY	4-71
TAC-IUT-2512	ASSIST A TACPI IN EVALUATING A JTAC	4-73
	JTAC Instructor	
TAC-IUT-2530	INSTRUCT A STUDENT TERMINAL CONTROLLER, CONTROLLING FW AIRCRAFT WHILE CONDUCTING SEAD	4-73
TAC-IUT-2531	INSTRUCT A STUDENT TERMINAL CONTROLLER, CONTROLLING RW AIRCRAFT WHILE CONDUCTING SEAD	4-74
TAC-IUT-2532	INSTRUCT A STUDENT TERMINAL CONTROLLER CONTROLLING AIRCRAFT IN A RESTRICTIVE THREAT ENVIRONMENT	4-76
	TACP Instructor	
TAC-IUT-2540	INSTRUCT A JTAC DURING A CAS SIMULATION EVENT	4-77
TAC-IUT-2541	INSTRUCT A JTAC CONDUCTING A NOTIONAL CASEVAC	4-78
TAC-IUT-2542	INSTRUCT A JTAC DURING A LIVE CAS EVENT	4-79
TAC-IUT-2543	CONDUCT A FIELD EVENT INVOLVING CAS AND ASSAULT SUPPORT ASSETS INTEGRATED WITH GROUND MANEUVER	4-80

4015. INSTRUCTOR TRAINING 2500-LEVEL EVENTS

TAC-IUT-2510: CONDUCT AN ACADEMIC PERIOD OF INSTRUCTION

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted in an academic setting; focus is on not only the content of the lecture, but also the delivery method and effectiveness of instructional technique(s).

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a classroom setting with a computer, projector and whiteboard; TACP members; TACP academic courseware.

STANDARD: Using existing courseware, prepare and deliver an academic lecture that is doctrinally and tactically correct. Instruction should be conducted in a manner that is appropriate to the training audience.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: 1 year experience as a qualified JTAC/FAC(A) and MAWTS-1 academic support package. TAC-DESG-2620/2630

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

UNITS/PERSONNEL: TACPI for evaluation purposes.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Classroom, computer, projector, and whiteboard.

TAC-IUT-2511: CONTROL FW AND RW CAS ASSETS SIMULTANEOUSLY

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted during live execution; may also be conducted in conjunction with other 2000-level codes; focus is integration of multiple dissimilar CAS elements in sector; indirect fire may be employed.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Multiple elements of dissimilar CAS aircraft supporting the same terminal attack controller; attack types may include sectored-simultaneous, sectored-sequential, or combined-sequential.

STANDARD: Effective and safe integration of multiple CAS elements applying applicable doctrine and standardization; plan appropriate geometry; maintain awareness of asset status and attack timeline; maintain awareness of target location; effective weapon to target matching and sensor employment; conduct effective target area correlation if method of attack is BOT.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine best coordinate sources based on potential for target location error.
2. Route and update aircraft in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
3. Receive element check-in.
4. Apply aircraft and ordnance capabilities to target attack briefs and tactical situation.
5. Determine appropriate methods of attack and types of terminal attack control.
6. Manage the doctrinal net(s) to ensure effective communication flow between all elements.
7. Develop and transmit game plans for each element which include type of control, method of attack, ordnance specifications, and mission timeline.
8. Transmit target attack briefs within 15 minutes of target identification.
9. Conduct effective target area correlation as appropriate.
10. Control target attacks in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures.
11. Maintain awareness of each CAS element.
12. Provide threat calls to CAS aircraft as appropriate throughout the attack.
13. Accurately assess effects of CAS.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TAC-IUT-2510

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
D540 Charge, Propellant 155mm Green Bag M	14 charges per Marine
D544 Projectile, 155mm High Explosive M10	10 rounds per Marine
D550 Projectile, 155mm Smoke White Phosph	4 rounds per Marine
N340 Fuze, Point Detonating M739/M739A1	14 fuses per Marine
N523 Primer, Percussion M82	14 cartridges per Marine
Mk-80 series bombs, rockets or PGMS	4
20mm, 25mm, 7.62mm or 50 cal	500

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of FW and one section of RW aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit (artillery or mortars); TACP radio operator; TACPI for instructional purposes.

TAC-IUT-2512: ASSIST A TACPI IN EVALUATING A JTAC

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted during live execution; may be conducted in conjunction with a JTAC 18 month evaluation; focus is on the tactically correct, standardized execution of CAS.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Permissive or restrictive threat environment; one section of OAS aircraft.

STANDARD: Under the direct supervision of a TACPI, evaluate a JTAC conducting terminal attack control; 2 day controls, 2 night controls, and 1 Type 1 control required for completion; ensure the safe execution of the event; provide guidance, as required, throughout the event; appropriately debrief the controlling JTAC at the conclusion of training.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TAC-IUT-2511

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE: As required per student's T&R event.

AIRCRAFT: As required per student's T&R event.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit (artillery or mortars); TACP radio operator; TACPI for instructional purposes.

TAC-IUT-2530: INSTRUCT A STUDENT TERMINAL CONTROLLER, CONTROLLING FW AIRCRAFT WHILE CONDUCTING SEAD

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: 0: E: A (2 FW): D

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Instruct, at a minimum, 4 day and 4 night controls (Min of 2 Type 1 Control) student FW controls. The target must be marked by artillery, mortars, naval gunfire, or LASER designator. Student must coordinate SEAD with indirect fires.

STANDARD: Ensure CAS brief is safe and correct. Ensure SEAD is properly coordinated/deconflicted and implemented into the mission. Ensure the student knows the SEAD and CAS timelines. Ensure CAS brief is delivered correctly to the CAS aircraft. Ensure a mark is coordinated and implemented correctly. Monitor and correct student communications with the CAS aircraft. Ensure marking corrections are timely and correct. Ensure the CAS aircraft meet clearance criteria prior to student communication of weapons release approval. Monitor mission safety at all times. Conduct a thorough debrief with the student terminal controller.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: 1 year experience as a qualified JTAC/FAC(A) and EWTG academic support package. TAC-DESG-2620/2630

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
D540 Charge, Propellant 155mm Green Bag M	2 charges per Marine
D550 Projectile, 155mm Smoke White Phosph	2 rounds per Marine
N340 Fuze, Point Detonating M739/M739A1	2 fuses per Marine
N523 Primer, Percussion M82	2 cartridges per Marine
Mk-80 series bombs, PGMs or equivalent	2
20mm or 25mm	250

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of FW aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit (artillery or mortars); TACP radio operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-IUT-2531: INSTRUCT A STUDENT TERMINAL CONTROLLER, CONTROLLING RW AIRCRAFT WHILE CONDUCTING SEAD

TAC-IUT-2532: INSTRUCT A STUDENT TERMINAL CONTROLLER CONTROLLING AIRCRAFT IN A RESTRICTIVE THREAT ENVIRONMENT

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

DESCRIPTION: 0: E: A (2 FW or RW): D, N

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Instruct, at minimum, 2 day or night controls a section of FW or RW controls utilizing NVDs (if conducted at night).

STANDARD: Ensure CAS brief is safe and correct. Ensure CAS brief is delivered correctly to the CAS aircraft. Ensure a mark is coordinated and implemented correctly. Monitor and correct student communications with the CAS aircraft. Ensure marking corrections are timely and correct. Ensure the CAS aircraft meet clearance criteria prior to student communication "Cleared Hot." Monitor mission safety at all times. Conduct a thorough debrief with the student terminal controller.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TAC-IUT-2531

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
D540 Charge, Propellant 155mm Green Bag M	2 charges per Marine
D550 Projectile, 155mm Smoke White Phosph	2 round per Marine
N340 Fuze, Point Detonating M739/M739A1	2 fuses per Marine
N523 Primer, Percussion M82	2 cartridges per Marine
Mk-80 series bombs, rockets or PGMS	2
20mm, 25mm, 7.62mm or 50 cal	250

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of FW or RW aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit (artillery or mortars); TACP radio operator; TACPI, JTACE or qualified 7502/8002 for instructional purposes.

TAC-IUT-2540: INSTRUCT A JTAC DURING A CAS SIMULATION EVENT

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted using simulation; may also be conducted in conjunction with other 2000-level codes; focuses on integration of multiple dissimilar CAS elements in sector; indirect fire and UAS may be employed.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Simulated environment using TACP suite equipment embedded in the simulation device, one section of FW aircraft and one section of RW aircraft with both general purpose and precision-guided munitions; attack types may include sectored-simultaneous, sectored-sequential, or combined-sequential.

STANDARD: Develop an appropriate scenario to include ACMs, FSCMs, and SPINs; Set up the simulation device(s)/equipment; brief the event to a JTAC; monitor and control the event ensuring effective and safe integration of multiple CAS elements through the application of doctrine and standardized procedures.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Ensure simulation device(s)/equipment is operating properly.
2. Conduct a pre-mission brief with the JTAC and role players to include performance standards.
3. Note deviations from doctrine and/or standardized procedures.
4. Evaluate the effectiveness of tactical decisions.
5. Conduct a thorough debrief following the event and provide instruction as required correcting noted deficiencies.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: MAWTS-1 Air Officer Course academic syllabus.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Category I or II simulator.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: MAWTS-1 Air Officer Instructor for instructional purposes.

TAC-IUT-2541: INSTRUCT A JTAC CONDUCTING A NOTIONAL CASEVAC

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted using live aircraft; focuses on LZ selection, CASEVAC request procedures and terminal guidance of aircraft in accordance with doctrine and standardized procedures.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Day and night permissive threat environment; a RW or TR assault support aircraft; simulated casualty; LZ marking equipment.

STANDARD: Ensure the establishment a landing zone suitable for applicable aircraft; ensure request for CASEVAC is in accordance with appropriate format; monitor LZ brief; supervise far and near terminal guidance of aircraft.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Ensure landing zone location is appropriate for the type of aircraft employed.
2. Monitor doctrinal request for CASEVAC aircraft.
3. Monitor landing zone brief.
4. Provide simulated casualty information to the JTAC and ensure that information is passed to the appropriate agencies in accordance with doctrine and standardized procedures/formats.
5. Ensure visual signals are appropriate.
6. Supervise the control of aircraft into and out of marked landing zone.
7. Conduct a thorough debrief following the event and provide instruction as required to correct noted deficiencies.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: MAWTS-1 Air Officer Course academic syllabus.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	4 grenades per Marine
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	4 grenades per Marine

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17440 Personnel/Equipment Drop Zone

AIRCRAFT: One RW or TR aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: TACP radio operator, MAWTS-1 Air Officer Instructor for instructional purposes.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Day and night LZ marking equipment.

TAC-IUT-2542: INSTRUCT A JTAC DURING A LIVE CAS EVENT

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted during live execution; may be conducted in conjunction with other 2000-level codes; focuses on brief and control of attack in accordance with doctrine and standardized procedures for appropriate type of control; multiple engagements shall be conducted in order to assess scenarios requiring different types of control/methods of attack.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Day or night, permissive or restrictive threat environment; one section of CAS aircraft; indirect fires may be incorporated but are not required.

STANDARD: Develop a tactical scenario that requires multiple types of control and methods of attack; brief the event to the JTAC; monitor and control the event ensuring effective and safe execution of CAS; provide guidance as required during the conduct of the event.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Ensure the JTAC provides deconfliction information to the aircraft.
2. Evaluate the situation update transmitted to the aircraft.
3. Evaluate type of control/method of attack selected.
4. Monitor game plan development/transmission.
5. Ensure CAS attack brief and control of target attack is in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures governing type of control selected.
6. Conduct a thorough debrief following the event and provide instruction, as required, correcting noted deficiencies.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: MAWTS-1 Air Officer Course academic syllabus.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
D540 Charge, Propellant 155mm Green Bag M	2 charges per Marine
D550 Projectile, 155mm Smoke White Phosph	2 rounds per Marine
N340 Fuze, Point Detonating M739/M739A1	2 fuses per Marine
N523 Primer, Percussion M82	2 cartridges per Marine
Mk-80 series bombs, rockets or PGMS	2
20mm, 25mm, 7.62mm or 50 cal	250

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of RW or FW aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit (artillery or mortars); TACP radio operator; MAWTS-1 Air Officer Instructor for instructional purposes.

TAC-IUT-2543: CONDUCT A FIELD EVENT INVOLVING CAS AND ASSAULT SUPPORT ASSETS INTEGRATED WITH GROUND MANUEVER

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Event designed to be conducted during live execution; may be conducted in conjunction with other 2000-level codes; focuses on the integration of CAS attacks with simultaneous assault support operations.

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Permissive threat environment; one section of CAS aircraft; one section of assault support aircraft; ground forces may be notional; indirect fires may be incorporated but are not required.

STANDARD: Participate in the fires and assault support planning for the evolution; ensure the fires plan supports the scheme of maneuver; develop a plan to route assault support aircraft into and out of the objective area; control CAS attacks using the type of control and method of attack appropriate to the tactical situation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Provide deconfliction/safety of flight information to aircraft.
2. Communicate on doctrinal radio net(s) to maintain control of the objective area.
3. Develop and transmit a game plan that supports the scheme of maneuver and GCE targeting priorities.
4. Control CAS attacks in accordance with doctrine and applicable procedures governing type of control selected.

5. Prioritize CAS attack and assault support timing based on the threat and ground scheme of maneuver.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: MAWTS-1 Air Officer Course academic syllabus.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
D540 Charge, Propellant 155mm Green Bag M	2 charges per Marine
D550 Projectile, 155mm Smoke White Phosph	2 rounds per Marine
N340 Fuze, Point Detonating M739/M739A1	2 fuses per Marine
N523 Primer, Percussion M82	2 cartridges per Marine
Mk-80 series bombs, rockets or PGMs	2
20mm, 25mm, 7.62mm or 50 cal	250

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of RW or TR assault support aircraft and one section of FW or RW OAS aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit (artillery or mortars); TACP radio operator; MAWTS-1 Air Officer Instructor for instructional purposes.

**4016. REQUIRED EVENTS (RQD), QUALIFICATIONS (QUAL)/DESIGNATION (DESG) 2600-
LEVEL EVENTS**

1. Required Events (RQD)

a. Purpose. Track training codes associated with required evaluations of JTAC proficiency.

b. General. IAW JCAS AP MOA, JTAC qualified individuals will undergo performance evaluations at 18 month intervals after qualification.

c. Academic Training. None.

d. Field and Simulator Training

2. Qualification Events (QUAL)

a. Purpose. Track training codes associated with qualifications and certifications.

b. Academic Training. None.

c. Field and Simulator Training

3. Designation Events (DESG)

a. Purpose. Track training codes associated with qualifications and certifications.

b. General. The following codes may be logged once the respective syllabus is completed.

c. Academic Training. None.

d. Field and Simulator Training

4. Academic Tracking. Academic training is not coded and will not be associated with CRP. An academic syllabus will be provided in the Core Skill Introduction Phase by EWTGs. The MAWTS-1 Course Catalog will address the Core Skill Plus and Advanced Phase. Annual training requirements will be tracked at the individual MAGTF level by the unit TACPI/Air Officer.

4017. INDEX OF REQUIRED EVENTS (RQD), QUALIFICATIONS (QUAL)/DESIGNATION (DESG) 2600 EVENTS

Event Code	Event	Page
Required Events		
TAC-RQD-2600	DEMONSTRATE PROFICIENCY AS A JTAC DURING 18 MONTH EVALUATION	4-84
Qualification Events		
TAC-QUAL-2601	TRACKING CODE FOR FULLY QUALIFIED JTAC STATUS	4-84
TAC-QUAL-2602	TRACKING CODE FOR MTAC QUALIFICATION STATUS	4-85
TAC-QUAL-2603	TRACKING CODE FOR MFAC QUALIFICATION STATUS	4-85
Designation Events		
TAC-DESG-2604	TRACKING CODE FOR AIR OFFICER DESIGNATION	4-86
TAC-DESG-2610	TRACKING CODE FOR JTACE DESIGNATION	4-86
TAC-DESG-2620	TRACKING CODE FOR TACPI DESIGNATION	4-87
TAC-DESG-2630	TRACKING CODE FOR JTACI DESIGNATION	4-87

4018. **REQUIRED EVENTS (RQD), QUALIFICATIONS (QUAL)/DESIGNATION (DESG) 2600-LEVEL EVENTS**

TAC-RQD-2600: DEMONSTRATE PROFICIENCY AS A JTAC DURING 18 MONTH EVALUATION

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

DESCRIPTION: 2: E: A (2 FW or RW): (N)

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Control a CAS mission with FW or RW aircraft in any threat environment.

STANDARD: Using doctrinal control procedures control a section of CAS aircraft on a marked or unmarked target. Provide timely corrections and BDA. Two terminal controls required for completion

REFERENCES:

1. JCAS AP MOA

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of FW or RW OAS aircraft.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: FW: a minimum of 2 Mk-80 series bombs or equivalent. RW: 2 rockets or a PGM and 100 rounds.

TAC-QUAL-2601: TRACKING CODE FOR FULLY QUALIFIED JTAC STATUS

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Completion of CHK-1190 meets the requirements for the student to be certified as a JTAC.

STANDARD: TACP T&R Manual and JCAS AP MOA. At the discretion of the commanding officer, a qualification letter shall be placed in the JTAC IPR.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TAC-CHK-1190	TAC-SSUP-1100	TAC-OAS-1130
TAC-OAS-1131	TAC-OAS-1132	TAC-OAS-1133
TAC-OAS-1134	TAC-OAS-1135	TAC-OAS-1136
TAC-SOAS-1110	TAC-SOAS-1111	TAC-SOAS-1112
TAC-SOAS-1113	TAC-SOAS-1114	TAC-SOAS-1115
TAC-SOAS-1116	TAC-SOAS-1117	TAC-SOAS-1118
TAC-SOAS-1119	TAC-SOAS-1120	TAC-SSUP-1101

REFERENCES:

1. JCAS AP MOA

TAC-QUAL-2602: TRACKING CODE FOR MTAC QUALIFICATION STATUS

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 18 months

MOS PERFORMING: 8002

BILLETS: JTAC

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Completion of the Core Skill Plus training events meets the requirements for the student to be qualified as a Marine TAC.

STANDARD: At the discretion of the commanding officer, a qualification letter shall be placed in the JTAC IPR.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TAC-AER-2107	TAC-SOAS-2007	TAC-INTG-2102
TAC-INTG-2103	TAC-INTG-2104	TAC-INTG-2105
TAC-INTG-2106	TAC-OAS-2108	TAC-SAER-2010
TAC-SINT-2009	TAC-SOAS-2001	TAC-SOAS-2002
TAC-SOAS-2003	TAC-SOAS-2004	TAC-SOAS-2005
TAC-SOAS-2006	TAC-SOAS-2008	TAC-SOAS-2011
TAC-SOAS-2012	TAC-SOAS-2013	TAC-AS-2101

TAC-QUAL-2603: TRACKING CODE FOR MFAC QUALIFICATION STATUS

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 18 months

MOS PERFORMING: 7502

BILLETS: FAC

GRADES: CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Completion of the Core Skill plus training events meets the requirements for the student to be qualified as a Marine FAC.

STANDARD: At the discretion of the commanding officer, a qualification letter shall be placed in the JTAC IPR.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TAC-INTG-2105	TAC-SASM-2109	TAC-SAER-2010
TAC-SINT-2009	TAC-SINT-2110	TAC-SOAS-2001
TAC-SOAS-2002	TAC-SOAS-2003	TAC-SOAS-2004
TAC-SOAS-2005	TAC-SOAS-2006	TAC-SOAS-2007
TAC-SOAS-2008	TAC-SOAS-2011	TAC-SOAS-2012
TAC-SOAS-2013	TAC-AS-2101	TAC-INTG-2103
TAC-AER-2107	TAC-INTG-2102	TAC-INTG-2104
TAC-INTG-2106	TAC-OAS-2108	TAC-INTG-2111

TAC-DESG-2604: TRACKING CODE FOR AIR OFFICER DESIGNATION

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 18 months

MOS PERFORMING: 7502

BILLETS: Air Officer

GRADES: CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: An aviator certified as a JTAC and qualified per this manual, assigned by the unit's commanding officer to be his primary advisor on the integration and employment of aviation, and unit aviation integrators.

STANDARD: At the discretion of the commanding officer, a designation letter shall be placed in the JTAC IPR.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TAC-QUAL-2601

TAC-DESG-2610: TRACKING CODE FOR JTACE DESIGNATION

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 18 months

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Completion of the TAC-IUT-2512 meets the requirements for the JTAC to be designated as a JTACE.

STANDARD: At the discretion of the commanding officer, a designation letter shall be placed in the JTAC IPR.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TAC-IUT-2510 TAC-IUT-2512 TAC-IUT-2511

TAC-DESG-2620: TRACKING CODE FOR TACPI DESIGNATION

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Completion of the TAC-IUT-2543 meets the requirements for the JTAC to be designated as a TACPI.

STANDARD: At the discretion of the MAWTS-1 Commanding Officer, a designation letter shall be placed in the JTAC IPR.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TAC-IUT-2540 TAC-IUT-2543 TAC-IUT-2542
TAC-IUT-2541

TAC-DESG-2630: TRACKING CODE FOR JTACI DESIGNATION

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

DESCRIPTION: 0: E: A

MOS PERFORMING: 7502, 8002

BILLETS: FAC, JTAC

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Completion of the TAC-IUT-2532 meets the requirements for the JTAC to be designated as a JTACI.

STANDARD: At the discretion of the commanding officer, a designation letter shall be placed in the JTAC IPR.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TAC-IUT-2530

TAC-IUT-2532

TAC-IUT-2531

4019. Range Training Requirements. The range requirements in these tables are based on event requirements listed in the individual event descriptions. Units should make every effort to adhere to the requirements listed in the event descriptions, but commanding officers may waive requirements based on existing range capabilities and limitations. Deviation from range requirements must be annotated in the JTAC's IPR for each T&R code logged.

Category I (Airspace)	Abbreviation	Name	Description	Notes
CAT I	MOA	Special Use Airspace or MOA	Per Flight Information Publications	
CAT I	RSTD	Restricted / Warning Area	Per Flight Information Publications	
Category II (Capabilities)	Abbreviation	Name	Description	Notes
CAT II	EW	Electronic Warfare	Threat Emitters providing a dynamic red/or gray force threat environment to enhance threat recognition, self-protection and defense suppression techniques.	
CAT II	LSTSS	Large Scale Target Sensor System	A remote control scoring system capable of tracking Laser designator spots	
CAT II	IWTS	Imaging Weapons Training System	Virtual simulation to provide pilot uplink imagery of weapon seeker image through TOF to actual target	Supports SLAM-ER
CAT II	URBN WPNS	Urban Weapons Impact Range	Urban CAS range capable of JCAS, LT INERT and LSR.	
CAT II	URBN TRG	Urban Training	Urban area with overlying Restricted or MOA training airspace. Does not imply authorized weapons release or Laser use.	Example is a town such as Yuma under the Dome MOA.
CAT II	LSR	Laser Safe Range	Supports Airborne Laser Firing.	
CAT II	RLSR	Remote Laser Capable	A remote operated ground Laser may designate a target	Should be standard on a RKD RNG
CAT II	TGT	Target	Any point- target that is authorized to release INERT	May include an unscored

			weapons on.	Raked Range
CAT II	IR TGT	IR Significant Target	IR Significant Target	
CAT II	RDR TGT	Radar Significant Target	Radar Significant Target	
CAT II	LINK	LINK 16	LINK 16 available.	
Category III (Ordnance Restrictions)	Abbreviation	Name	Description	Notes
CAT III	HE	HE Impact Area	Supports live HE ordnance. Implies EXP.	
CAT III	JCAS	JCAS TTPs	Supports all three types of CAS in the range. Allows JTAC personnel on range. Implies LSR and either INERT or HE.	
CAT III	LT INERT	Light Inert	Light Inert Impact Area.	MK-76 / LGTR / BDU-48 / Gun / Rockets
CAT III	HVY INERT	Heavy Inert	Heavy Inert Impact Area.	500lb and above
CAT III	JDAM	JDAM Impact Area / Target	Supports JDAM release.	
CAT III	JSOW	JSOW Impact Area / Target	Supports JSOW release.	
CAT III	LGB	LGB Impact Area / Target	Supports LGB (HE or HVY INERT) release and Laser firing	
CAT III	AA MISSILE	AA Missile Firing Range	Supports AA Missile Firing	AIM-9 / AIM-7 / AIM-120
CAT III	AS MISSILE	A/S Missile Firing Range	Supports AS Missile Firing	LMAV / LGB / Hellfire / TOW
CAT III	ARM MISSILE	ARM Missile Firing Range	Supports ARM Missile Firing. Requires an EW emitter.	AGM-88
CAT III	EXP	Expendables Authorized	Supports use of Chaff & Flares	
CAT III	ICM	Improved Conventional Munitions	Supports ICM or Cluster munitions	

Table 4-1

4020. SIMULATOR TRAINING REQUIREMENTS

a. Simulator Definitions. TACP simulation is broken down by three categories; two simulator types and a Practical Exercise.

b. The categories are defined as follows:

(1) Practical Exercise. Hands-on application of the performance required in enabling or terminal learning objectives. Gives the TACP team the opportunity to acquire and practice skills, knowledge, and the behaviors necessary to perform the training objective successfully.

(2) Category I. Immersive simulation environment incorporating a domed visual environment allowing the user to utilize the same or similar equipment they will use during live missions.

(3) Category II. Procedural trainer utilizing front projection or helmet mounted display (HMD).

4021. TACP T&R EVENT MATRICES

CORE SKILL INTRODUCTION										
TRNG CODE	REFLY INT	DEVICE	#& TYPE A/C	CONDITIONS	PREREQS	EVAL	CHAINING	EVENT DESC	RANGE REQ	ORD REQ
TAC-SSUP-1100	*	CAT-II				YES		IDF SIM #1 ADJ FIRE		
TAC-SSUP-1101	*	CAT-II				YES		IDF SIM #2 SEAD		
TAC-SOAS-1110	*	CAT-II				YES		FLT SIM #1 FW CAS MRKD TGT		
TAC-SOAS-1111	*	CAT-II				YES		FLT SIM #2 RW CAS ATK PERM THRT		
TAC-SOAS-1112	*	CAT-II				YES		FLT SIM #3 FW CAS ATK UNMRKD TGT		
TAC-SOAS-1113	*	CAT-II				YES		FLT SIM #4 FW/RW CAS REST THRT W/INT OR NON-STD SEAD		
TAC-SOAS-1114	*	CAT-II				YES		FLT SIM #5 FW CAS REST THRT W/LSR MARK TGT		
TAC-SOAS-1115	*	CAT-II				YES		FLT SIM #6 FW CAS IAM URBAN		
TAC-SOAS-1116	*	CAT-I				YES		FLT SIM #7 FW/RW NIGHT CAS W/BI		
TAC-SOAS-1117	*	CAT-I				YES		FLT SIM #8 FW/RW NIGHT CAS REST THRT W/SEAD		
TAC-SOAS-1118	*	CAT-I				YES		FLT SIM #9 FW/RW TYPE 2 CONTROL STAND OFF WPNS		

TRNG CODE	REFLY INT	DEVICE	#& TYPE A/C	CONDITIONS	PREREQS	EVAL	CHAINING	EVENT DESC	RANGE REQ	ORD REQ
TAC-SOAS-1119	*	CAT-II				YES		FLT SIM #10 FW/RW TYPE 2 CONTROL W/JFO		
TAC-SOAS-1120	*	CAT-II				YES		FLT SIM #11 FW/RW TYPE 3 CONTROL W/UAS		
TAC-OAS-1130	*	OP	2xFW	D	TAC-SOAS-1110	YES		FW DAY CAS ON MARK TGT PERM THRT	JCAS, HE	FW-2 MK 80 SERIES; IDF-2 MARK RDS
TAC-OAS-1131	*	OP	2xRW	D	TAC-SOAS-1111	YES		RW DAY CAS ON MARK TGT PERM THRT	JCAS, HE, AS MSL	RW-2 ROCKETS OR PGM & 100 RDS; IDF-2 MARK RDS
TAC-OAS-1132	*	OP	2xFW/ RW	D	TAC-SOAS-1113/TAC-OAS-1130, 1131	YES		FW/RW REST THRT W/CONT SEAD DAY	JCAS, HE, AS MSL	FW-2 MK 80 SERIES; RW-2 ROCKETS OR PGM & 100 RDS; IDF-2 MARK & 5 HE
TAC-OAS-1133	*	OP	2xFW/ RW	N	TAC-SOAS-1114/TAC-OAS-1130, 1131	YES		FW/RW PERM THRT W/NVDS	JCAS, HE, AS MSL	FW-2 MK 80 SERIES; RW-2 ROCKETS OR PGM AND 100 RDS; IDF- 2 MARK & 4 HE
TAC-OAS-1134	*	OP	2xFW/ RW	N	TAC-SOAS-1117/TAC-OAS-1130, 1131	YES		FW/RW CAS W/ADVANCED SYS	JCAS, HE, AS MSL	FW-2 MK 80 SERIES; RW-2 ROCKETS OR PGM AND 100 RDS; IDF- MARK AS REQ
TAC-OAS-1135	*	OP	2xRW	N	TAC-SSUP-1111/TAC-OAS-1131	YES		RW CAS W/5-LINE	JCAS, HE, AS MSL	RW-2 ROCKETS OR PGM AND 100 RDS; IDF- 1 MARK & 2 ILLUM

TRNG CODE	REFLY INT	DEVICE	#& TYPE A/C	CONDITIONS	PREREQS	EVAL	CHAINING	EVENT DESC	RANGE REQ	ORD REQ
TAC-AS-1136	*	OP	1xRW ASSAU LT			YES		CASEVAC DEMO	RESTR	4xYLW/GRN SMK GREN
TAC-CHK-1190	*	OP OR CAT- II	2xFW/ RW		TAC-OAS- 1130, 1131	YES		DAY/NIGH T CHECKRID E / CERT	JCAS, HE, AS MSL	FW-2 MK 80 SERIES; RW-2 ROCKETS OR PGM AND 100 RDS; IDF- 2 MARK & 4 HE
CORE SKILL BASIC										
TAC-SOAS-2001	*	CAT I OR II	2 FW					FW DAY GP ORD W/TGT MARK	-	-
TAC-SOAS-2002	*	CAT I OR II	2 RW					RW DAY GP ORD W/TGT MARK	-	-
TAC-SOAS-2003	*	CAT I OR II	2 FW					FW NIGHT GP ORD W/TGT MARK	-	-
TAC-SOAS-2004	*	CAT I OR II	2 RW					RW NIGHT GP ORD W/TGT MARK	-	-
TAC-SOAS-2005	*	CAT I OR II	2 FW					FW LGW W/GRND LASER	-	-
TAC-SOAS-2006	*	CAT I OR II	2 FW					FW IAM	-	-
TAC-SOAS-2007	*	CAT I OR II	2 RW					RW LGW W/GRND LASER	-	-
TAC-SOAS-2008	*	CAT I OR II	2 FW/RW					FW/RW TYPE 2 OR 3 TERM ATK CTRL	-	-
CORE SKILL BASIC										
TAC-SINT-2009	*	OP OR CAT I OR CAT II	2 FW/RW		ACADEMICS			TYPE 2 OR 3 W/JFO	-	-
TAC-SAER-2010	*	CAT I OR II	1 FW		ACADEMICS	-		TGT CORRELAT ION W/UAS	-	-
TAC-SOAS-2011	*	CAT I OR II	2 FW/RW		ACADEMICS	-		DAY URBAN CAS	-	-

TRNG CODE	REFLY INT	DEVICE	#& TYPE A/C	CONDITIONS	PREREQS	EVAL	CHAINING	EVENT DESC	RANGE REQ	ORD REQ
TAC-SOAS-2012	*	CAT I OR II	2 FW/RW		TAC-SOAS-2011			NIGHT URBAN CAS	-	-
TAC-SOAS-2013	*	CAT I OR II	2 FW		ACADEMICS			DIGITALLY AIDED CAS	-	-
CORE SKILL ADVANCED										
TAC-AS-2101	*	OP	1 RW/TR		ACADEMICS	-		CASEVAC	RESTR	4xYLW/GRN SMK GREN
TAC-INTG-2102	*	OP	2 FW	-	TAC-SOAS-2001, 2003, 2005, 2006	-	-	FW CAS REST THRT W/IDF	JCAS, HE, AS MSL	FW-2 MK 80 SERIES OR PGM; IDF-MARK/SUPP
TAC-INTG-2103	*	OP	2 RW	-	TAC-SOAS-2002, 2004, 2007,	-	-	RW CAS REST THRT W/IDF	JCAS, HE, AS MSL	RW-2 ROCKETS OR PGM AND 100 RDS; IDF-MARK/SUPP
TAC-INTG-2104	*	OP	2 FW	-	TAC-SOAS-2001, 2003, 2005, 2006, TAC-INTG-2102	-	-	FW CAS W/GRND MAN	JCAS, HE, AS MSL	FW-2 MK 80 SERIES OR PGM; IDF-MARK/SUPP
TAC-INTG-2105	*	OP	2 RW	-	TAC-SOAS-2002, 2004, 2007, TAC-INTG-2103	-	-	RW CAS W/GRND MAN	JCAS, HE, AS MSL	RW-2 ROCKETS OR PGM AND 100 RDS; IDF-MARK/SUPP
TAC-INTG-2106	*	OP OR CAT I OR II	2 FW/RW	-	TAC-SOAS-2008, TAC-SINT-2009	-	-	TYPE 2 OR 3 W/JFO	JCAS, HE, AS MSL	FW-2 MK 80 SERIES OR PGM; RW-2 ROCKETS OR PGM AND 100 RDS; IDF-MARK AS REQ
TAC-AER-2107	*	OP	2 FW/RW	-	TAC-SOAS-2008, TAC SAER-2010	-	-	TGT CORRELATION W/ VDL	JCAS, HE, AS MSL	FW-2 MK 80 SERIES OR PGM; RW-2 ROCKETS OR PGM AND 100 RDS; IDF-MARK AS REQ
TAC-OAS-2108	*	OP	2 FW	-	TAC-SOAS-2205	-	-	DIGITALLY AIDED CAS	JCAS, HE, AS MSL	FW-2 MK 80 SERIES OR PGM; IDF-MARK/SUPP

TRNG CODE	REFLY INT	DEVICE	#& TYPE A/C	CONDITIONS	PREREQS	EVAL	CHAINING	EVENT DESC	RANGE REQ	ORD REQ
TAC-SASM-2109	*	CAT I OR II	2 FW/RW	-	TAC-SAER-2010	-	-	AIRSPACE MGMT	-	-
TAC-SINT-2110	*	CAT I OR II	2 FW/RW	-	TAC-SAER-2010	-	-	INT UAS W/CAS	-	-
TAC-INTG-2111	*	OP	2 FW/RW	-	TAC-SOAS-2001, 2002, TAC-SASM-2109	-	-	FAC(A) INT	JCAS, HE, AS MSL	FW-2 MK 80 SERIES OR PGM; RW-2 ROCKETS OR PGM AND 100 RDS; IDF-MARK AS REQ
CORE SKILL PLUS										
TAC-INTG-2201	*	OP	4 FW/RW		COMBAT RDY PHASE			MULT CAS ELEMENTS	JCAS, JDAM, HE	FW-2 MK 80 SERIES OR PGM; RW-2 ROCKETS OR PGM AND 100 RDS; IDF-MARK AS REQ
TAC-AS-2202	*	OP	1 RW/TR		COMBAT RDY PHASE			CNTRL RW/TR INTO LZ DAY	RESTR	4xYLW/GRN SMK GREN
TAC-AS-2203	*	OP	1 RW/TR		COMBAT RDY PHASE			CNTRL RW/TR INTO LZ NIGHT	RESTR	4xYLW/GRN SMK GREN
TAC-OAS-2204	*	OP	1 BOMBER		COMBAT RDY PHASE		-	BOMBER MSN	JCAS, JDAM, HE	FW-2 MK 80 SERIES OR PGM
TAC-SOAS-2205	*	CAT I OR II	1 AC-130		COMBAT RDY PHASE		-	AC-130 CFF	-	-
TAC-SEW-2206	*	CAT I OR II	1 EW		COMBAT RDY PHASE		-	AIRBORNE EW ASSET	-	-
TAC-SEW-2207	*	CAT I OR II	2 FW/RW, 1 EW		COMBAT RDY PHASE		-	CAS W/EW SEAD	-	-
INSTRUCTOR TRAINING										
TAC-IUT-2510	*	-	-	-	TAC-DESG-2620 OR 2630 & JTAC QUAL'D 1 YR PROF FAC(A)	YES		CONDUCT ACADEMIC INSTRUCTION	-	-

TRNG CODE	REFLY INT	DEVICE	#& TYPE A/C	CONDITIONS	PREREQS	EVAL	CHAINING	EVENT DESC	RANGE REQ	ORD REQ
TAC-IUT-2511	*	OP	2x FW & RW	D,N	TAC-IUT-2510	YES		SIMO CNTRL OF FW & RW CAS	JCAS, JDAM, HE	FW-2 MK 80 SERIES OR PGM; RW-2 RKTS OR PGM & 100 RDS; IDF MARK/SUPP RDS
TAC-IUT-2512	*	OP	2x FW/RW	D,N	TAC-IUT-2511	YES		ASSIST TACPI EVALUATING A JTAC	JCAS, HE, LGB, AS MSL	FW-2 MK 80 SERIES OR PGM, AND 250 RDS; RW-2 RKTS OR PGM, AND 100 RDS; IDF MARK/SUPP RDS
TAC-IUT-2530	*	OP	2 FW	D	TAC-DESG-2620 OR 2630 & JTAC QUAL'D 1 YR PROF FAC(A)	YES		INSTRUCT A STUDENT JTAC CNTRL DAY FW CAS W/SEAD	JCAS, HE, LGB, AS MSL	FW-2 INERT MK 80 SERIES, INERT PGM, AND 250 RDS; IDF MARK/SUPP RDS
TAC-IUT-2531	*	OP	2 RW	D	TAC-IUT-2530	YES		INSTRUCT A STUDENT JTAC CNTRL DAY RW CAS W/SEAD	JCAS, HE, LGB, AS MSL	RW-2 RKTS OR PGM, AND 100 RDS; IDF MARK/SUPP RDS
TAC-IUT-2532	*	OP	2 FW/RW	N	TAC-IUT-2531	YES		INSTRUCT A STUDENT JTAC CNTRL REST THRT NIGHT RW OR FW CAS W/SEAD	JCAS, HE, LGB, AS MSL	FW-2 MK 80 SERIES OR PGM, AND 250 RDS; RW-2 RKTS OR PGM, AND 100 RDS; IDF MARK/SUPP RDS
TAC-IUT-2540	*	CAT I OR II	2 FW/RW		MAWTS-1 AOC ACADEMICS	YES		INSTRUCT JTAC IN SIMULATION EVENT	-	-
TAC-IUT-2541	*	OP	1 RW/TR	D	MAWTS-1 AOC ACADEMICS	YES		INSTRUCT JTAC CONDUCTING NOTIONAL CASEVAC	RESTR	4xYLW/GRN SMK GREN

TRNG CODE	REFLY INT	DEVICE	#& TYPE A/C	CONDITIONS	PREREQS	EVAL	CHAINING	EVENT DESC	RANGE REQ	ORD REQ
TAC-IUT-2542	*	OP	2 FW/RW	D	MAWTS-1 AOC ACADEMICS	YES		INSTRUCT JTAC CONDUCTI NG FW OR RW CAS	JCAS , JDAM, HE, LGB, AS MSL	FW-2 MK 80 SERIES OR PGM; RW-2 RKTS OR PGM & 100 RDS; IDF MARK/SUPP RDS
TAC-IUT-2543	*	OP	2 FW/RW , 2 ASSLT SUPP	D	MAWTS-1 AOC ACADEMICS	YES		CONDUCT CAS & ASSLT SPPT W/GRND MAN	JCAS , JDAM, HE, LGB, AS MSL	FW-2 MK 80 SERIES OR PGM; RW-2 RKTS OR PGM & 100 RDS; IDF-2 MARK/SUPP RDS; 4xYLW/GRN SMK GREN
REQUIRED/QUALIFICATION/DESIGNATION										
TAC-RQD-2600	18 MONTHS	OP	2x FW/RW			YES		JTAC 18 MONTH EVAL	JCAS , JDAM, HE, LGB, AS MSL	FW-2 MK 80 SERIES OR PGM; RW-2 RKTS OR PGM & 100 RDS; IDF MARK/SUPP RDS
TAC-QUAL-2601	*				CORE SKILL INTRO PHASE			FULLY QUAL'D JTAC	NONE	NONE
TAC-QUAL-2602	*				COMBAT RDY PHASE			MARINE TAC	NONE	NONE
TAC-QUAL-2603	*				COMBAT RDY PHASE			MARINE FAC	NONE	NONE
TAC-DESG-2604					-			AO DESG	NONE	NONE
TAC-DESG-2610					TAC-IUT- 2512			JTACE DESG	NONE	NONE
TAC-DESG-2620					TAC-IUT- 2543			TACPI DESG	NONE	NONE
TAC-DESG-2630					TAC-IUT- 2532			JTACI DESG	NONE	NONE

TACP T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 5

JFO INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE.	5000	5-2
PREREQUISITES	5001	5-2
JFO CERTIFICATION.	5002	5-2
JFO REFRESHER QUALIFICATION	5003	5-2
JFO CORE SKILL INTRODUCTION 1000-LEVEL EVENTS.	5004	5-3
JFO CORE SKILL INTRODUCTION PHASE.	5005	5-3
INDEX OF JFO CORE SKILL INTRODUCTION 1000-LEVEL EVENTS	5006	5-4
JFO CORE SKILL INTRODUCTION 1000-LEVEL EVENTS.	5007	5-5
JFO CORE SKILL BASIC 2000-LEVEL EVENTS	5008	5-14
INDEX OF JOINT FIRES OBSERVER (JFO) 2000-LEVEL EVENTS. . . .	5009	5-15
JFO 2000-LEVEL EVENTS.	5010	5-16

TACP T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 5

JFO INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

5000. PURPOSE

1. The purpose of Core Skill Introduction (1000-level) training is to provide the knowledge and skills required to perform as a basically trained individual and to certify individuals in accordance with joint standards.
2. Core Skill Plus (2000-level) events build upon the formal introductory training and complete the preparation of individuals for combat at the unit level with the Combat Ready Phase. Beyond the Combat Ready Phase, Core Skill Plus events include training that may be required to prepare individuals for specific circumstances.

5001. PREREQUISITES

1. TACP/JFO Course prerequisites are outlined in Appendix F of this manual, and are intended to establish a baseline of knowledge to prepare Marines from various backgrounds to be successful at entry level training and beyond. All 2000-level events assume successful completion of the Core Skill Introduction phase.
2. The JFO Primer distance learning course is intended to establish a baseline of knowledge to prepare Marines from multiple MOSs to be successful at JFO School. All prospective JFO school participants must complete JFO Primer distance learning within 180 days prior to attending either EWTG. Primer checklist must be complete and submitted to JFO Occupational Field sponsor no less than one week prior to student report date.

5002. JFO CERTIFICATION

<u>WEEKS</u>	<u>COURSE/PHASE</u>	<u>ACTIVITY</u>
1	JFO Primer Distance Learning	Unit Level
2	JFO Course	EWTG

5003. JFO REFRESHER QUALIFICATION

<u>WEEKS</u>	<u>COURSE/PHASE</u>	<u>ACTIVITY</u>
1	JFO Primer Distance Learning	Unit Level
1	JFO Requalification	Unit Level
.25	JFO Evaluation (> 18 months)	Unit Level

5004. JFO CORE SKILL INTRODUCTION 1000-LEVEL EVENTS. A prospective JFO must attend an approved JFO course to conduct the Core Skill Introduction phase (1000 level). Upon successful completion of the syllabus, the individual will be a certified JFO IAW the JFO MOA, and may be designated as a JFO by the unit commanding officer.

5005. JFO CORE SKILL INTRODUCTION PHASE

1. Purpose. To introduce CAS and fire support tactics, techniques, and procedures to prospective JFOs in order to meet the certification requirements.
2. General. This phase provides the prospective JFOs with exposure to artillery, naval surface fire support, mortar fire support, fixed and rotary-wing terminal guidance operations, close air support planning and execution, aircraft capabilities, TACP/JFO targeting equipment and procedures, fire support coordination, and CASEVAC procedures.
3. Academic Training. The JFO Course POI provides for academic instruction to support this phase of training. This training shall be conducted and documented in the JFO's IPR.
4. Field and Simulator Training. Below are all the simulator or field training events conducted as part of the initial certification by the schoolhouse during the JFO Course.
5. Live Fire Exercise. There is no requirement for live fire events during JFO certification or qualification per the JCAS AP MOA (JFO). However, Marine JFOs shall perform the events as delineated in this manual and units are encouraged to employ JFOs during live fire training events when able.
6. Minimum events. Course Managers shall ensure each student receives the minimum number and type of events required by the JCAS AP MOA (JFO).
7. JFO Course Managers have the authority to waive prerequisites in exceptional circumstances to facilitate the continuation of training.
8. All 1000 level events are initial events conducted at a formal school.

5006. INDEX OF JFO CORE SKILL INTRODUCTION 1000-LEVEL EVENTS

Event Code	Event	Page
JFO-SSUP-1100	CONDUCT ONE SIMULATED ADJUST FIRE MISSION WITH AN INDIRECT FIRE ASSET	5-5
JFO-SSUP-1101	CONDUCT ONE SIMULATED ADJUST FIRE MISSION WITH NAVAL SURFACE FIRE SUPPORT	5-5
JFO-SSUP-1102	CONDUCT ONE SIMULATED SEAD MISSION WITH NAVAL SURFACE FIRE SUPPORT	5-6
JFO-SSUP-1103	CONDUCT ONE AC-130 CALL FOR FIRE IN A PERMISSIVE THREAT ENVIRONMENT	5-7
JFO-SOAS-1200	PROVIDE TARGETING INFORMATION FOR A RW TYPE 2 OR 3 CONTROL IN A PERMISSIVE THREAT ENVIRONMENT	5-7
JFO-SOAS-1201	PROVIDE TARGETING INFORMATION FOR A FW TYPE 2 CONTROL AT NIGHT EMPLOYING GROUND DELIVERED ILLUM	5-8
JFO-SOAS-1202	PROVIDE TARGETING INFORMATION FOR A FW TYPE 2 CONTROL IN AN URBAN ENVIRONMENT	5-9
JFO-SOAS-1203	PROVIDE A DIGITAL CAS BRIEF FOR A FW TYPE 2 CONTROL	5-10
JFO-SOAS-1204	PROVIDE TARGETING INFORMATION FOR A FW TYPE 3 CONTROL EMPLOYING UAS	5-11
JFO-SOAS-1205	CONDUCT EMERGENCY CAS AS A NON-QUALIFIED JTAC	5-12

5007. JFO CORE SKILL INTRODUCTION 1000-LEVEL EVENTS

JFO-SSUP-1100: CONDUCT ONE SIMULATED ADJUST FIRE MISSION WITH AN INDIRECT FIRE ASSET

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 0: I: R: E: SI or SII: D:

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a magnetic compass, map, an identified target and an indirect fire asset in a simulated environment.

STANDARD: Adjust fire to within 50 meters of intended target within three rounds.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine target location via map plot with 200m accuracy.
2. Using doctrinal format and procedures formulate and, within 2 minutes, transmit the Call for Fire to an artillery or mortar firing unit.
3. Determine and transmit OT direction with or before the first correction, if using the grid method of target location.
4. Transmit subsequent corrections in the proper sequence.
5. Enter Fire For Effect (FFE).
6. Transmit refinement data (if any), Record as Target (if desired), End of Mission (EOM), and surveillance.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Instructor, Category I or II simulation device, and simulator operator.

JFO-SSUP-1101: CONDUCT ONE SIMULATED ADJUST FIRE MISSION WITH NAVAL SURFACE FIRE SUPPORT

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 0: I: R: E: SI or II: D:

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a magnetic compass, map, an identified target and a Naval Surface Fire Support asset in a simulated environment.

STANDARD: Adjust fire to within 50 meters of intended target within three rounds.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine if the target is suitable for Naval Gunfire (NGF)
2. Determine target location with 200m accuracy.
3. Prepare and, within 2 minutes, transmit the complete Call for Fire (CFF) to either the artillery liaison officer or the NGLO at the Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC) via the NSFS COF net or Supporting Arms Coordination Center (SACC) via Naval Gunfire Spot Net.
4. Transmit subsequent corrections.
5. Engage target using naval gunfire terms and techniques.
6. Initiate Fire for Effect (FFE) when a 100 meter bracket is split.
7. Transmit End of Mission (EOM) and surveillance.

REFERENCES:

1. ATP 4(E) CH 7 Allied Naval Gunfire Support
2. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Instructor, Category I or II simulation device, and simulator operator.

JFO-SSUP-1102: CONDUCT ONE SIMULATED SEAD MISSION WITH NAVAL SURFACE FIRE SUPPORT

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 0: I: R: E: SI or II: D:

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a VECTOR/DAGR combination, map, an identified CAS target, a surface to air threat and a naval gunfire asset in a simulated environment.

STANDARD: Effectively suppress simulated enemy air defense asset with rounds impacting within 200 meters; effectively mark CAS target with marking round impacting within 300 meters of target; coordinate pertinent information to terminal attack controller.

REFERENCES:

1. ATP 4(E) Allied Naval Gunfire Support
 2. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
 3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller
-

JFO-SSUP-1103: CONDUCT ONE AC-130 CALL FOR FIRE IN A PERMISSIVE THREAT ENVIRONMENT

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 0: I: R: E: SI or II: N:

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a bearing to an identified target, a map, an indirect fire asset and an AC-130 in a night simulated environment.

STANDARD: Begin AC-130 CFF transmission within 2 minutes using doctrinal procedures.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Detect target(s) using aided or unaided night vision and determine location via map plot with 200m accuracy.
2. Transmit situation update to AC-130.
3. Transmit AC-130 CFF.
4. Assess weapons effects and provide refinements for AC-130 if applicable.
5. Report BDA to FSCC.
6. Transmit appropriate refinement, End of Mission (EOM), and surveillance.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
2. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Instructor, Category I or II simulation device, and simulator operator.

JFO-SOAS-1200: PROVIDE TARGETING INFORMATION FOR A RW TYPE 2 OR 3 CONTROL IN A PERMISSIVE THREAT ENVIRONMENT

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 0: I: R: E: SI or SII: N:

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: While working with a JTAC, given a VECTOR/DAGR, a laser target designator, an identified target, a map, an indirect fire asset, and a RW CAS section with LGWs in a simulated environment.

STANDARD: Find target and threat location(s) within 4 minutes; using doctrinal procedures transmit target information to a JTAC who will conduct a type 2 or 3 control.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Detect target(s) using aided or unaided day vision and determine location via map plot with 200m accuracy.
2. Communicate target location and friendly situation to the JTAC.
3. Send immediate requests to the Fire Support Coordination Center, Forward Air Controller/Joint Terminal Attack Controller.
4. Transmit immediate Close Air Support (CAS) request if required.
5. Transmit target attack information to the FAC/JTAC with applicable remarks.
6. Conduct a talk-on with the JTAC and/or CAS aircraft as required.
7. Be prepared to transmit Abort if an unsafe situation develops.
8. Conduct Terminal Guidance Operations (TGO) with a Laser target designator.
9. Transmit adjustments from the lead aircraft ordnance impacts to the -2 aircraft if required.
10. Transmit BDA to the aircraft and Fire Support Coordination Center/Forward Air Controller/Joint Terminal Attack Controller as appropriate.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Instructor, Category I or II simulation device, and simulator operator.

JFO-SOAS-1201: PROVIDE TARGETING INFORMATION FOR A FW TYPE 2 CONTROL AT NIGHT EMPLOYING GROUND DELIVERED ILLUM

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 0: I: R: E: SI or SII: N:

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: While working with a JTAC, given a VECTOR/DAGR, an IR pointer, a LASER designator, an identified target, a map, an indirect fire asset and a FW section with GP ordnance in a simulated night environment.

STANDARD: Find target and threat location(s) within 4 minutes; using doctrinal procedures employ battlefield illumination to positively identify target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify target(s) to illuminate.
2. Transmit the illumination Call For Fire (CFF).
3. Complete the mission.
4. Send immediate requests to the Fire Support Coordination Center, Forward Air Controller/Joint Terminal Attack Controller.
5. Transmit immediate Close Air Support (CAS) request if required.
6. Transmit target attack information to the FAC/JTAC with applicable remarks.
7. Employ battlefield illumination.
8. Provide talk-on if required.
9. Be prepared to transmit Abort if an unsafe situation develops.
10. Transmit adjustments from the lead aircraft ordnance impacts to the -2 aircraft if required.
11. Transmit BDA to the aircraft and Fire Support Coordination Center as appropriate.
12. Send EOM transmission and record illumination as required.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Instructor, Category I or II simulation device, and simulator operator.

JFO-SOAS-1202: PROVIDE TARGETING INFORMATION FOR A FW TYPE 2 CONTROL IN AN URBAN ENVIRONMENT

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2: I, R: A/SI (2 FW or 2 RW): D

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: While working with a FAC(A), given a TACP equipment suite, a map, an identified target, and CAS aircraft section with initially-aided munitions, in an urban environment with a restrictive threat.

STANDARD: Using doctrinal control procedures, provide target information to the FAC(A) and support the CAS attack on a marked target; effectively suppress enemy surface to air threat; mark CAS target within 300 meters; provide timely corrections and BDA as required.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Locate CAS target and surface to air threat.
2. Send immediate requests to the Fire Support Coordination Center, Forward Air Controller/Joint Terminal Attack Controller.
3. Transmit immediate Close Air Support (CAS) request if required.
4. Transmit target attack information to the FAC(A) with applicable remarks.
5. Provide talk-on if required.
6. Transmit the SEAD Call For Fire (CFF) if required.
7. Assess effectiveness of suppression.
8. Be prepared to transmit Abort if an unsafe situation develops.
9. Transmit adjustments from the lead aircraft ordnance impacts to the -2 aircraft if required.
10. Transmit BDA to the aircraft and Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC) as appropriate.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: JFO-SOAS-1200

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Instructor, category II simulation device, and simulator operator.

JFO-SOAS-1203: PROVIDE A DIGITAL CAS BRIEF FOR A FW TYPE 2 CONTROL

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 0: I: R: E: SII: D:

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given TLDHS, a map, an identified target, and a CAS aircraft section.

STANDARD: Utilize Target Location Designation Hand-Off System (TLDHS) in order to support target information for a JTAC controlling a CAS mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish and maintain digital communication with a JTAC or C2 node.
2. Plot observer and friendly positions and a target on the digital map set.
3. Generate pertinent elements of a 9-line brief (lines 4-8) or CAS request utilizing TLDHS and digitally send to the appropriate C2 node or JTAC.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Instructor, category II simulation device, and simulator operator.

JFO-SOAS-1204: PROVIDE TARGETING INFORMATION FOR A FW TYPE 3 CONTROL EMPLOYING UAS

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 0: I: E: SII: D:

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given JTAC support, a TACP equipment suite with a remote video terminal, a map, an identified target, a UAS, and FW CAS section.

STANDARD: Using doctrinal procedures conduct target correlation with a UAS asset maintaining positive identification of target(s); determine target location; provide timely corrections and BDA to CAS aircraft.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Maintain communication with JTAC and UAS operator.
2. Visually acquire and determine target coordinates via downlink.
3. Provide situational awareness and updates as required.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Instructor, category I simulation device,
qualified JTAC and simulator operator.

5008. JFO CORE SKILL BASIC 2000-LEVEL EVENTS. Completion of the Core Skill Introduction training accomplished at a formal school results in certification as a JFO. However, an entry level formal education is not adequate to sufficiently prepare an individual to perform many of the complex tasks in an operational environment. The core skill basic events (2000 level codes) are designed to prepare an individual for combat should be considered required training.

13 May 2011

5009. INDEX OF JFO CORE SKILL BASIC 2000 LEVEL EVENTS

Event Code	Event	Page
JFO-OAS-2100	CONDUCT SIX ADJUST FIRE OR FIRE FOR EFFECT MISSIONS WITH AN INDIRECT FIRE SUPPORT ASSET	5-16
JFO-OAS-2101	PROVIDE TARGET INFORMATION IN SUPPORT OF A TYPE 2 CONTROL	5-17
JFO-OAS-2102	PROVIDE TARGET INFORMATION IN SUPPORT OF A TYPE 2 CONTROL AT NIGHT	5-18
JFO-OAS-2103	PROVIDE TARGET INFORMATION IN SUPPORT OF A LASER-GUIDED WEAPON ON A MARKED TARGET	5-19
JFO-OAS-2104	PROVIDE TARGET INFORMATION IN SUPPORT OF A LASER-GUIDED WEAPON ON A MARKED TARGET AT NIGHT	5-20
JFO-SOAS-2105	CONDUCT AN AC-130 CALL FOR FIRE IN A PERMISSIVE THREAT ENVIRONMENT AT NIGHT	5-21
JFO-OAS-2106	OBSERVE A JTAC CONTROL FW OR RW ATTACKS USING TYPE 1 TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL	5-22
JFO-OAS-2107	CONDUCT EMERGENCY CAS AS A NON-QUALIFIED JTAC ON A MARKED OR UNMARKED TARGET	5-23
JFO-OAS-2108	CONDUCT EMERGENCY CAS AS A NON-QUALIFIED JTAC ON A MARKED OR UNMARKED TARGET AT NIGHT	5-24
JFO-OAS-2200	CONDUCT A NOTIONAL CASEVAC	5-25
JFO-SOAS-2201	PROVIDE TARGET INFORMATION TO A JTAC WITH THE AID OF A UAS ASSET IN SUPPORT OF A TYPE 2 CONTROL	5-26
JFO-SOAS-2202	PROVIDE TARGET INFO TO A JTAC WITH THE USE OF A VIDEO DOWN-LINK IN SUPPORT OF A TYPE 2 CONTROL	5-27
JFO-SOAS-2203	PROVIDE TARGET INFORMATION TO A JTAC USING A REMOTE REAL-TIME SENSOR IN SUPPORT OF A TYPE 2 CONTROL	5-27
JFO-SOAS-2204	OBSERVE A JTAC USING PSS-SOF IN SUPPORT OF TYPE 2 CONTROL	5-28
JFO-SOAS-2205	PROVIDE TARGET INFORMATION TO A JTAC EMPLOYING THE TLDHS IN SUPPORT OF A DIGITALLY AIDED CAS MISSION	5-29
JFO-SOAS-2206	INTEGRATE WITH A FAC(A) DURING THE EXECUTION OF A CAS MISSION	5-29
JFO-EVL-2600:	CONDUCT 18 MONTH EVALUATION	5-30

5010. JFO 2000-LEVEL EVENTS

JFO-OAS-2100: CONDUCT SIX ADJUST FIRE OR FIRE FOR EFFECT MISSIONS WITH AN INDIRECT FIRE SUPPORT ASSET

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 6: I: R: E: D/N:

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a TACP equipment suite, map, an identified target and an indirect fire asset in a simulated environment.

STANDARD: Adjust fire to within 50 meters of intended target within three adjusting rounds.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine target location via map plot with 200m accuracy.
2. Using doctrinal format and procedures formulate and, within 2 minutes, transmit the Call for Fire to an artillery or mortar firing unit.
3. Determine and transmit OT direction with or before the first correction, if using the grid method of target location.
4. Transmit subsequent corrections in the proper sequence.
5. Enter Fire For Effect (FFE).
6. Transmit refinement data (if any), Record as Target (if desired), End of Mission (EOM), and surveillance.

REFERENCES:

1. ATP 4(E) CH 7 Allied Naval Gunfire Support
2. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
D540 Charge, Propellant 155mm Green Bag M	40 charges per Marine
D544 Projectile, 155mm High Explosive M10	40 rounds per Marine
N340 Fuze, Point Detonating M739/M739A1	40 fuses per Marine
N523 Primer, Percussion M82	40 cartridges per Marine

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit (artillery or mortars).

JFO-OAS-2101: PROVIDE TARGET INFORMATION IN SUPPORT OF A TYPE 2 CONTROL

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2: I, R: A (2 FW or 2 RW): D

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: While working with a JTAC given a TACP equipment suite, a map, an identified target, a CAS aircraft section, and special instructions (SPINs).

STANDARD: Using doctrinal control procedures determine and communicate target location to the JTAC or air officer and support a CAS attack on a marked target; provide timely corrections and BDA.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify and determine location of CAS target(s).
2. Obtain the ground commander's approval before sending the Close Air Support request.
3. Send immediate requests to the Fire Support Coordination Center, Forward Air Controller/Joint Terminal Attack Controller.
4. Transmit immediate Close Air Support (CAS) request if required.
5. Transmit target attack information to the FAC/JTAC with applicable remarks.
6. Provide talk-on, if required.
7. Be prepared to transmit Abort if an unsafe situation develops.
8. Transmit adjustments from the lead aircraft ordnance impacts to the -2 aircraft if required.
9. Transmit BDA to the aircraft and Fire Support Coordination Center as appropriate.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

FW: 2 inert LGW, 500 rounds

RW: PGM (captive or inert), 4 rockets, 200 rounds

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of CAS aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: Qualified JTAC.

JFO-OAS-2102: PROVIDE TARGET INFORMATION IN SUPPORT OF A TYPE 2 CONTROL AT NIGHT

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2: I, R: A (2 FW or 2 RW): N

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: While working with a JTAC at night, given a TACP equipment suite, a map, an identified target, a CAS aircraft section, and special instructions (SPINs).

STANDARD: Using doctrinal control procedures, determine and communicate target location to the JTAC or air officer and support a CAS attack on a marked target; provide timely corrections and BDA.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify and determine location of CAS target(s).
2. Obtain the ground commander's approval before sending the Close Air Support request.
3. Send immediate requests to the Fire Support Coordination Center, Forward Air Controller/Joint Terminal Attack Controller.
4. Transmit immediate Close Air Support (CAS) request if required.
5. Transmit target attack information to the FAC/JTAC with applicable remarks.
6. Provide talk-on or IR mark if required.
7. Be prepared to transmit Abort if an unsafe situation develops.
8. Transmit adjustments from the lead aircraft ordnance impacts to the -2 aircraft as required.
9. Transmit BDA to the aircraft and Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC) as appropriate.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

FW: 2 inert LGW, 500 rounds
RW: PGM (captive or inert), 4 rockets, 200 rounds

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of CAS aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: Qualified JTAC.

JFO-OAS-2103: PROVIDE TARGET INFORMATION IN SUPPORT OF A LASER-GUIDED WEAPON ON A MARKED TARGET

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2: I, R: A (2 RW/2 FW): D

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: While working with a JTAC given a TACP equipment suite, a map, an identified target, a CAS aircraft section, and special instructions (SPINs).

STANDARD: Using doctrinal control procedures determine and communicate target location to the JTAC or air officer and support a CAS attack on a marked target; provide timely corrections and BDA.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify and determine location of CAS target(s).
2. Obtain the ground commander's approval before sending the Close Air Support request.
3. Send immediate requests to the Fire Support Coordination Center, Forward Air Controller/Joint Terminal Attack Controller.
4. Transmit immediate Close Air Support (CAS) request if required.
5. Transmit target attack information to the FAC/JTAC with applicable remarks.
6. Provide talk-on, if required.
7. Conduct Terminal Guidance Operations with a LASER target designator.
8. Be prepared to transmit Abort if an unsafe situation develops.
9. Transmit adjustments from the lead aircraft ordnance impacts to the -2 aircraft if required.
10. Transmit BDA to the aircraft and Fire Support Coordination Center as appropriate.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

FW: 2 inert LGW, 500 rounds
RW: PGM (captive or inert), 4 rockets, 200 rounds

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of CAS aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: Qualified JTAC.

JFO-OAS-2104: PROVIDE TARGET INFORMATION IN SUPPORT OF A LASER-GUIDED WEAPON ON A MARKED TARGET AT NIGHT

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2: I, R: A (2 RW / 2 FW): N

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: While working with a JTAC given a TACP equipment suite, a map, an identified target, a CAS aircraft section, and special instructions (SPINs).

STANDARD: Using doctrinal control procedures determine and communicate target location to the JTAC or air officer and support a CAS attack on a marked target; provide timely corrections and BDA.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify and determine location of CAS target(s).
2. Obtain the ground commander's approval before sending the Close Air Support request.
3. Send immediate requests to the Fire Support Coordination Center, Forward Air Controller/Joint Terminal Attack Controller.
4. Transmit immediate Close Air Support (CAS) request if required.
5. Transmit target attack information to the FAC/JTAC with applicable remarks.
6. Provide talk-on, if required.
7. Conduct Terminal Guidance Operations with a LASER target designator.
8. Be prepared to transmit Abort if an unsafe situation develops.
9. Transmit adjustments from the lead aircraft ordnance impacts to the -2 aircraft if required.
10. Transmit BDA to the aircraft and Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC) as appropriate.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations

3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

FW: 2 inert LGW, 500 rounds
RW: PGM (captive or inert), 4 rockets, 200 rounds

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of CAS aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: Qualified JTAC.

JFO-SOAS-2105: CONDUCT AN AC-130 CALL FOR FIRE IN A PERMISSIVE THREAT ENVIRONMENT AT NIGHT

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2: I: SI or SII: N

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a bearing to an identified target, a map, and an AC-130 in a night simulated environment.

STANDARD: Begin AC-130 CFF transmission within 2 minutes using doctrinal procedures.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Detect target(s) using aided or unaided night vision and determine location via map plot with 200m accuracy.
2. Transmit situation update to AC-130.
3. Transmit AC-130 CFF.
4. Assess weapons effects and provide refinements for AC-130 if applicable.
5. Report BDA to FSCC.
6. Transmit appropriate refinement, End of Mission (EOM), and surveillance.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Category I or II simulation device, and simulator operator.

JFO-OAS-2106: OBSERVE A JTAC CONTROL FW OR RW ATTACKS USING TYPE 1 TERMINAL ATTACK CONTROL

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2: I, R: A (2 FW or 2 RW): D/N

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given JTAC support, TACP equipment suite, and a CAS aircraft section.

STANDARD: Observe a JTAC conduct the engagement of a target with aviation fires to meet ground commander's destruction criteria.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify CAS target(s).
2. Obtain the ground commander's approval before sending the Close Air Support request.
3. Send immediate requests to the Fire Support Coordination Center, Forward Air Controller/Joint Terminal Attack Controller.
4. Transmit immediate Close Air Support (CAS) request if required.
5. Observe and monitor the transmission of the target attack brief to the CAS aircraft with applicable remarks.
6. Monitor and verify mandatory read backs.
7. Monitor the target correlation.
8. Visually acquire attacking aircraft and assess attack geometry.
9. Communicate adjustments from the lead aircraft ordnance impacts to the JTAC for transmission to the -2 aircraft as required.
10. Transmit BDA to the aircraft and Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC) as appropriate.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

FW: 2 inert GP, 500 rounds
RW: 2 rockets, 100 rounds

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of CAS aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: Qualified JTAC.

JFO-OAS-2107: CONDUCT EMERGENCY CAS AS A NON-QUALIFIED JTAC ON A MARKED OR UNMARKED TARGET

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2: I: R: E: A: D:

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: In a limited communications environment, given a TACP equipment suite, and a CAS aircraft section during hours of daylight.

STANDARD: Using doctrinal procedures, safely and effectively conduct engagement of target to meet destruction criteria.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify and locate target(s) with 200m accuracy.
2. Obtain the ground commander's approval before sending the Close Air Support request.
3. Transmit immediate Close Air Support (CAS) request if required.
4. Plan for and implement Suppression of Enemy Air Defenses (SEAD) as required.
5. Identify yourself as Non-JTAC Qualified to CAS aircraft.
6. Transmit target attack brief to the CAS aircraft with applicable remarks.
7. Receive and verify mandatory read-backs.
8. Conduct target correlation with CAS aircraft.
9. Visually acquire aircraft (if conducting Type 1 control) and/or assess attack geometry, as required and provide timely and appropriate terminal attack control (cleared hot or abort); repeat as required.
10. Transmit adjustments from the lead aircraft ordnance impacts to the -2 aircraft as required.
11. Transmit BDA to the aircraft and Fire Support Coordination Center as appropriate.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

FW: 2 inert LGW, 500 rounds
RW: PGM (captive or inert), 4 rockets, 200 rounds

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of CAS aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: Qualified JTAC.

JFO-OAS-2108: CONDUCT EMERGENCY CAS AS A NON-QUALIFIED JTAC ON A MARKED OR UNMARKED TARGET AT NIGHT

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2: I: R: E: A: N:

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: In a limited communications environment, given a TACP equipment suite, and a CAS aircraft section at night.

STANDARD: Using doctrinal procedures, safely and effectively conduct engagement of target to meet destruction criteria.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify and locate target(s) with 200m accuracy.
2. Obtain the ground commander's approval before sending the Close Air Support request.
3. Transmit immediate Close Air Support (CAS) request if required.
4. Plan for and implement Suppression of Enemy Air Defenses (SEAD) as required.
5. Identify yourself as Non-JTAC Qualified to CAS aircraft.
6. Transmit target attack brief to the CAS aircraft with applicable remarks.
7. Receive and verify mandatory read-backs.
8. Conduct target correlation with CAS aircraft.
9. Visually acquire aircraft (if conducting Type 1 control) and/or assess attack geometry, as required and provide timely and appropriate terminal attack control (cleared hot or abort); repeat as required.

10. Transmit adjustments from the lead aircraft ordnance impacts to the -2 aircraft as required.
11. Transmit BDA to the aircraft and Fire Support Coordination Center as appropriate.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

FW: 2 inert LGW, 500 rounds
RW: PGM (captive or inert), 4 rockets, 200 rounds

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of CAS aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: Qualified JTAC.

JFO-OAS-2200: CONDUCT A NOTIONAL CASEVAC

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 0: I, R: A (1 TR/RW AS): (N)

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a radio, a simulated casualty, an assault support aircraft, and a landing zone.

STANDARD: Using doctrinal request and control procedures coordinate an assault support aircraft on a notional CASEVAC mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify and coordinate LZ set up.
2. Transmit CASEVAC request to appropriate agency.
3. Establish communications with CASEVAC aircraft and pass LZ brief.
4. Provide Initial Terminal Guidance (ITG) to CASEVAC aircraft for approach and landing into LZ.
5. Coordinate CASEVAC aircraft departure from LZ.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
2. MCWP 3-11.4 Helicopter Borne Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	4 grenades per Marine
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	4 grenades per Marine

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17440 Personnel/Equipment Drop Zone

AIRCRAFT: One RW or TR aircraft.

JFO-SOAS-2201: PROVIDE TARGET INFORMATION TO A JTAC WITH THE AID OF A UAS ASSET IN SUPPORT OF A TYPE 2 CONTROL

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 0: I: E: SI or SII: D:

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given JTAC support, a TACP equipment suite, a map, an identified target, a UAS, a CAS aircraft section, and special instructions (SPINs).

STANDARD: Using doctrinal procedures conduct target correlation with a UAS asset maintaining positive identification of target(s); determine target location; provide timely corrections and BDA to CAS aircraft.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Maintain communication with JTAC and UAS operator.
2. Visually acquire and determine target coordinates.
3. Provide situational awareness and updates as required.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Category I or II simulation device, and simulator operator.

JFO-SOAS-2202: PROVIDE TARGET INFO TO A JTAC WITH THE USE OF A VIDEO DOWN-LINK IN SUPPORT OF A TYPE 2 CONTROL

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 0: I: E: SI or SII: D:

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a video down-link asset (Video Scout), a map, an identified target, a UAS or a CAS aircraft section.

STANDARD: Provide target information, correlation, and positive identification using video down-link.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Maintain communication with JTAC and video down-link source operator.
2. Acquire and correlate target using a video down-link.
3. Plot and verify target location.
4. Provide SA and updates as required.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Category I or II simulation device, and simulator operator.

JFO-SOAS-2203: PROVIDE TARGET INFORMATION TO A JTAC USING A REMOTE REAL-TIME SENSOR IN SUPPORT OF A TYPE 2 CONTROL

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 0: I: E: SI or SII: D:

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a Remote Real-Time sensor, a map, an identified target, and a CAS aircraft section.

STANDARD: Effectively coordinate and maintain positive target identification to support a JTAC conducting a Type 2 control.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Maintain communication with JTAC and sensor operator.
2. Acquire and correlate target using the Remote Real-Time sensor.
3. Plot and verify target location.
4. Provide SA and updates as required.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Category I or II simulation device, and simulator operator.

JFO-SOAS-2204: OBSERVE A JTAC USING PSS-SOF IN SUPPORT OF TYPE 2 CONTROL

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 0: I: R: E: SI or SII: D:

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given PSS-SOF, a map, an identified target, a CAS aircraft section.

STANDARD: Observe a JTAC perform the procedures to derive CAT I target coordinates for inertially-aided munitions.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Acquire and correlate target location.
2. Observe JTAC use PSS-SOF to accurately and precisely locate the target.
3. Note the difference between the initial plotted location of the target before and the PSS-SOF derived target location.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Category I or II simulation device, and simulator operator

JFO-SOAS-2205: PROVIDE TARGET INFORMATION TO A JTAC EMPLOYING THE TLDHS IN SUPPORT OF A DIGITALLY AIDED CAS MISSION

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 0: I: R: E: SI or SII: D:

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given Target Location Designation Hand-off System (TLDHS), a map, an identified target, and a CAS aircraft section.

STANDARD: Utilize TLDHS in order to support targeting for a JTAC conducting a CAS mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish and maintain digital communication with a JTAC or C2 node.
2. Plot observer and friendly positions and a target on the digital map set.
3. Generate pertinent elements of a 9-line brief (lines 4-8) or CAS request utilizing TLDHS and digitally send to the appropriate C2 node or JTAC.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
3. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Category I or II simulation device, and simulator operator.

JFO-SOAS-2206: INTEGRATE WITH A FAC(A) DURING THE EXECUTION OF A CAS MISSION

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 0: I: R: E: SI or SII: D:

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given FAC(A) support, a map, an identified target, and a CAS aircraft section.

STANDARD: Provide a situation update to the FAC(A) to include commander's targeting priorities; maintain awareness of who has mark and/or control at all times.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Maintain communication with JTAC, FAC(A) and ground commander.
2. Visually acquire target(s), determine and communicate target location(s).
3. Provide SA and updates as required.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Category I or II simulation device, and simulator operator.

JFO-EVL-2600: CONDUCT 18 MONTH EVALUATION

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: 2: E: A (2 FW or 2 RW): (D/N)

BILLETS: JFO

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a TACP equipment suite, while working with a JTAC a map, an identified target, a CAS aircraft section, special instructions (SPINs).

STANDARD: Using doctrinal control procedures determine and communicate target location to the JTAC or air officer and support a CAS attack on a marked target; provide timely corrections and BDA.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform Tactical Risk Assessment and CAS mission planning.
2. Develop and execute an efficient and effective game plan that optimizes aircraft and JTAC systems for target correlation and accomplishment of ground commander's intent.
3. Identify hazards and implement control measures to ensure risk of fratricide is minimized.

4. Brief JTAC on CAS mission in accordance with doctrine and current TTPs.
5. Determine if CAS aircraft meet requirements and provide timely and appropriate target information.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-09 Joint Fire Support
2. JP 3-09.1 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Laser Designation Operations
3. JP 3-09.3 Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Close Air Support (CAS)
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
D505 Projectile, 155mm Illuminating M485A	2 round per Marine
D540 Charge, Propellant 155mm Green Bag M	2 charges per Marine
N340 Fuze, Point Detonating M739/M739A1	2 fuses per Marine
N523 Primer, Percussion M82	2 cartridges per Marine
FW: a minimum of 1 Inert LGW, and 250 rounds	
RW: PGM (captive or inert), 2 rockets and 100 rounds	

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

AIRCRAFT: One section of CAS aircraft.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: One firing unit (artillery or mortars); Qualified JTAC.

TACP T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX A

TERMS & DEFINITIONS

Air Interdiction – Air operations conducted to destroy, neutralize, or delay the enemy's military potential before it can be brought to bear effectively against friendly forces, or to otherwise achieve objectives. Air interdiction is conducted at such distance from friendly forces that detailed integration of each air mission with the fire and movement of friendly forces is not required. (JP 1-02)

Air Force Air and Space Operations Center – The senior agency that provides C2 of Air Force air and space operations and coordinates with other components and Services. It develops an air operations plan to meet the Joint Force Commander's (JFC) guidance. It allocates resources and tasks forces through ATOs. Also called AOC. (JP 3-9.3)

Air Liaison Officer – The senior tactical air control party member attached to a ground unit who functions as the primary advisor to the ground commander on air operations. An Air Liaison Officer is usually an aeronautically rated officer and is an expert in the capabilities and limitations of air operations. (JP 3-09.3)

Airspace Control Authority – The commander designated to assume overall responsibility for the operation of the airspace control system in the airspace control area. Also called ACA. (JP 1-02)

Airspace Control Order – An order implementing the airspace control plan that provides the details of the approved requests for airspace coordinating measures. It is published either as part of the air tasking order or as a separate document. Also called ACO. (JP 1-02)

Airspace Control Plan – The document approved by the joint force commander that provides specific planning guidance and procedures for the airspace control system for the joint force operational area. Also called ACP. (JP 1-02)

Airspace Coordination Area – A three-dimensional block of airspace in a target area, established by the appropriate ground commander, in which friendly aircraft are reasonably safe from friendly surface fires. The airspace coordination area may be formal or informal. Also called ACA. (JP 1-02)

Air Superiority – That degree of dominance in the air battle of one force over another which permits the conduct of operations by the former and its related land, maritime, and air forces at a given time and place without prohibitive interference by the opposing force. (JP 1-02)

Anti-Air Warfare – A US Navy/US Marine Corps term used to indicate that action required to destroy or reduce to an acceptable level the enemy air and missile threat. It includes such measures as the use of interceptors,

bombers, antiaircraft guns, surface-to-air and air-to-air missiles, electronic attack, and destruction of the air or missile threat both before and after it is launched. Other measures which are taken to minimize the effects of hostile air action are cover, concealment, dispersion, deception (including electronic), and mobility. Also called AAW. (JP 1-02)

Anti-Radiation Missile - A missile which homes passively on a radiation source. (JP 1-02)

Armed Reconnaissance - A mission with the primary purpose of locating and attacking targets of opportunity, i.e., enemy materiel, personnel, and facilities, in assigned general areas or along assigned ground communications routes, and not for the purpose of attacking specific briefed targets. Also called AR. (JP 1-02)

Attack Heading - 1. The interceptor heading during the attack phase that will achieve the desired track-crossing angle. 2. The assigned magnetic compass heading to be flown by aircraft during the delivery phase of an air strike. (JP 1-02)

Aviation Combat Element - The core element of a Marine Air-Ground Task Force (MAGTF) that is task-organized to conduct aviation operations. The aviation combat element provides all or a portion of the 6 functions of Marine aviation necessary to accomplish the MAGTF's mission. These functions are anti-air warfare, offensive air support, assault support, electronic warfare, air reconnaissance, and control of aircraft and missiles. The aviation combat element is usually composed of an aviation unit headquarters and various other aviation units or their detachments. It can vary in size from a small aviation detachment of specifically required aircraft to one or more Marine aircraft wings. The aviation combat element may contain other Service or foreign military forces assigned or attached to the MAGTF. Also called ACE. (MCRP 5-12C)

Battle Damage Assessment - The estimate of damage resulting from the application of lethal or nonlethal military force. Battle damage assessment is composed of physical damage assessment, functional damage assessment, and target system assessment. Also called BDA. (JP 1-02)

Certification - The evaluation process applied to an individual during a syllabus event(s) by a designated instructor or other authorized personnel for the purpose of ascertaining proficiency as a prerequisite to a qualification or designation. Individuals who satisfactorily complete the appropriate service academic and practical training requirements of a core training curriculum and complete a comprehensive evaluation may be granted a certification. (TACP T&R)

Close Air Support - Air action by fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft against hostile targets which are in close proximity to friendly forces and that require detailed integration of each air mission with the fire and movement of those forces. Also called CAS. (JP 1-02)

Combat Service Support Element - The core element of a Marine air-ground task force (MAGTF) that is task-organized to provide the combat service support necessary to accomplish the MAGTF mission. The combat service support element varies in size from a small detachment to one or more force service

support groups. It provides supply, maintenance, transportation, general engineering, health services, and a variety of other services to the MAGTF. The combat service support element itself is not a formal command. Also called CSSE. (JP 1-02)

Combined Arms – The full integration of combat arms in such a way that to counteract one, the enemy must become more vulnerable to another. (MCRP 5-12C)

Command And Control – The exercise of authority and direction by a properly designated commander over assigned and attached forces in the accomplishment of the mission. Command and control functions are performed through an arrangement of personnel, equipment, communications, facilities, and procedures employed by a commander in planning, directing, coordinating, and controlling forces and operations in the accomplishment of the mission. Also called C2. (JP 1-02)

Command Element – The core element of a Marine air-ground task force that is the headquarters. The command element is composed of the commander, general or executive and special staff sections, headquarters section, and requisite communications support, intelligence and reconnaissance forces, necessary to accomplish the MAGTF's mission. The command element provides command and control, intelligence, and other support essential for effective planning and execution of operations by the other elements of the MAGTF. The command element varies in size and composition and may contain other Service or foreign military forces assigned or attached to the MAGTF. Also called CE. (MCRP 5-12C)

Concept Of Operations – A verbal or graphic statement that clearly and concisely expresses what the joint force commander intends to accomplish and how it will be done using available resources. The concept is designed to give an overall picture of the operation. Also called commander's concept or CONOPS. (JP 5-0)

Control - A control consists of at least one aircraft attacking a surface target. The control begins with a CAS briefing (the 9-line is the JP 3-09.3 standard) from a JTAC and ends with either an actual/simulated weapons release or an abort on a final attack run. No more than 2 controls can be counted per CAS briefing per target. (TACP T&R)

Currency - Currency is a control measure used to determine qualification status. Currency is determined in terms of minimum training requirements that must be successfully completed within a defined time interval. An individual who successfully completes stated training requirements within the defined time interval is considered "current." (TACP T&R)

Deep Air Support - Air action against enemy targets at such a distance from friendly forces that detailed integration of each mission with fire and movement of friendly forces is not required. Deep air support missions are flown on either side of the fire support coordination line; the lack of a requirement for close coordination with the fire and movement of friendly forces is the qualifying factor. Also called DAS. (MCRP 5-12C)

Designation - A status assigned to an individual based on leadership ability. A designation is a command specific, one-time occurrence and remains in

effect until removed for cause or transfer from the unit. Unit commanding officers nominate individuals to receive designations. (TACP T&R)

Direct Air Support Center – The principal air control agency of the US Marine air command and control system responsible for the direction and control of air operations directly supporting the ground combat element. It processes and coordinates requests for immediate air support and coordinates air missions requiring integration with ground forces and other supporting arms. It normally collocates with the senior fire support coordination center within the ground combat element and is subordinate to the tactical air command center. Also called DASC. (JP 1-02)

Direct Support – A mission requiring a force to support another specific force and authorizing it to answer directly to the supported force's request for assistance. Also called DS. (JP 1-02)

Electronic Warfare – Military action involving the use of electromagnetic and directed energy to control the electromagnetic spectrum or to attack the enemy. Electronic warfare consists of three divisions: electronic attack, electronic protection, and electronic warfare support. Also called EW (JP 3-13.1)

a. Electronic Attack. Division of electronic warfare involving the use of electromagnetic energy, directed energy, or antiradiation weapons to attack personnel, facilities, or equipment with the intent of degrading, neutralizing, or destroying enemy combat capability and is considered a form of fires. Also called EA. (JP 3-13.1)

b. Electronic Protection. Division of electronic warfare involving actions taken to protect personnel, facilities, and equipment from any effects of friendly or enemy use of the electromagnetic spectrum that degrade, neutralize, or destroy friendly combat capability. Also called EP (JP 3-13.1)

c. Electronic Warfare Support. Division of electronic warfare involving actions tasked by, or under direct control of, an operational commander to search for, intercept, identify, and locate or localize sources of intentional and unintentional radiated electromagnetic energy for the purpose of immediate threat recognition, targeting, planning and conduct of future operations. Also called ES. (JP 3-13.1)

Fire Support Coordination Center – A single location in which are centralized communications facilities and personnel incident to the coordination of all forms of fire support. Also called FSCC. (JP 3-09.3)

Fire Support Coordination Line – A fire support coordinating measure that is established and adjusted by appropriate land or amphibious force commanders within their boundaries in consultation with superior, subordinate, supporting, and affected commanders. Fire support coordination lines facilitate the expeditious attack of surface targets of opportunity beyond the coordinating measure. A fire support coordination line does not divide an area of operations by defining a boundary between close and deep operations or a zone for close air support. The fire support coordination line applies to all fires of air, land, and sea-based weapon systems using any type of ammunition. Forces attacking targets beyond a fire support

coordination line must inform all affected commanders in sufficient time to allow necessary reaction to avoid fratricide. Supporting elements attacking targets beyond the FSCL must ensure that the attack will not produce adverse effects on, or to the rear of, the line. Short of a fire support coordination line, all air-to-ground and surface-to surface attack operations are controlled by the appropriate land or amphibious force commander. The fire support coordination line should follow well defined terrain features. Coordination of attacks beyond the fire support coordination line is especially critical to commanders of air, land, and special operations forces. In exceptional circumstances, the inability to conduct this coordination will not preclude the attack of targets beyond the fire support coordination line. However, failure to do so may increase the risk of fratricide and could waste limited resources. Also called FSCL. (JP 3-09.3)

Forward Air Controller – A naval aviator certified as a JTAC who coordinates, integrates, and directs actions of combat aircraft engaged in support of ground combat operations. Also called FAC. (JP 3-09.3)

Forward Air Controller (Airborne) – A specifically trained and qualified naval aviator who exercises control from the air of aircraft engaged in close air support of ground troops. The forward air controller (airborne) is normally an airborne extension of the tactical air control party who can conduct terminal attack control. Also called FAC(A). (JP 1-02)

Forward Arming And Refueling Point – A temporary facility- organized, equipped, and deployed by an aviation commander, and normally located in the main battle area closer to the area where operations are being conducted than the aviation unit's combat service area- to provide fuel and ammunition necessary for the employment of aviation maneuver units in combat. The forward arming and refueling point permits combat aircraft to rapidly refuel and rearm simultaneously. Also called FARP. (JP 1-02)

Forward Looking Infrared – An airborne, electro-optical thermal imaging device that detects far-infrared energy, converts the energy into an electronic signal, and provides a visible image for day or night viewing. Also called FLIR. (JP 1-02) See night vision device.

Forward Operating Base – An airfield used to support tactical operations without establishing full support facilities. The base may be used for an extended time period. Support by a main operating base will be required to provide backup support for a forward operating base. Also called FOB. (JP 1-02)

General Support – That support which is given to the supported force as a whole and not to any particular subdivision thereof. Also called GS. (JP 1-02)

Ground Combat Element – The core element of a Marine air-ground task force (MAGTF) that is task-organized to conduct ground operations. It is usually constructed around an infantry organization but can vary in size from a small ground unit of any type, to one or more Marine divisions that can be independently maneuvered under the direction of the MAGTF commander. The ground combat element itself is not a formal command. Also called GCE. (MCRP 5-12C)

High-Density Airspace Control Zone – Airspace designated in an airspace control plan or airspace control order, in which there is a concentrated employment of numerous and varied weapons and airspace users. A high-density airspace control zone has defined dimensions which usually coincide with geographical features or navigational aids. Access to a high-density airspace control zone is normally controlled by the maneuver commander. The maneuver commander can also direct a more restrictive weapons status within the high-density airspace control zone. Also called HIDACZ. (JP 3-52)

Immediate Air Support – Air support to meet specific requests which arise during the course of a battle and which by their nature cannot be planned in advance. (JP 3-09.3)

Intelligence Preparation Of The Battlespace – The analytical methodologies employed by the Services or joint force component commands to reduce uncertainties concerning the enemy, environment, time, and terrain. Intelligence preparation of the battlespace supports the individual operations of the joint force component commands. Also called IPB. (JP 2-01.3)

Joint Air Operations Center – A jointly staffed facility established for planning, directing, and executing joint air operations in support of the joint force commander's operation or campaign objectives. Also called JAOC. (JP 3-30)

Joint Force Air Component Commander – The commander within a unified command, subordinate unified command, or joint task force responsible to the establishing commander for making recommendations on the proper employment of assigned, attached, and/or made available for tasking air forces; planning and coordinating air operations; or accomplishing such operational missions as may be assigned. The joint force air component commander is given the authority necessary to accomplish missions and tasks assigned by the establishing commander. Also called JFACC. (JP 3-0)

Joint Fires Observer – A trained, certified, and qualified Servicemember who can request, adjust, and control surface-to-surface fires, provide targeting information in support of Type 2 and 3 close air support (CAS) terminal attack controls, and perform autonomous terminal guidance operations. Trained Service members will be jointly known as a Joint Fire Observers. Also called JFO. (FM 3-09.32/MCRP 3-16.6A/NTTP 3-09.2/AFTTP(I) 3-2.6)

Joint Force Commander – A general term applied to a combatant commander, subunified commander, or joint task force commander authorized to exercise combatant command (command authority) or operational control over a joint force. Also called JFC. (JP 1).

Joint Terminal Attack Controller – A qualified (certified) Service member who, from a forward position, directs the action of combat aircraft engaged in close air support and other offensive air operations. A qualified and current joint terminal attack controller will be recognized across DoD as capable and authorized to perform terminal attack control. Also called JTAC. (JP 3-09.3.)

Maneuver Warfare – A warfighting philosophy that seeks to shatter the enemy's cohesion through a variety of rapid, focused, and unexpected actions which

create a turbulent and rapidly deteriorating situation with which the enemy cannot cope. (MCRP 5-12C)

Marine Air Command And Control System – A system that provides the aviation combat element commander with the means to command, coordinate, and control all air operations within an assigned sector and to coordinate air operations with other Services. It is composed of command and control agencies with communications-electronics equipment that incorporates a capability from manual through semiautomatic control. Also called MACCS. (JP 3-09.3)

Marine Air-Ground Task Force – The Marine Corps principal organization for all missions across the range of military operations, composed of forces task-organized under a single commander capable of responding rapidly to a contingency anywhere in the world. The types of forces in the MAGTF are functionally grouped into 4 core elements: a command element, an aviation combat element, a ground combat element, and a combat service support element. The 4 core elements are categories of forces, not formal commands. The basic structure of the MAGTF never varies, though the number, size, and type of Marine Corps units comprising each of its 4 elements will always be mission dependent. The flexibility of the organizational structure allows for one or more subordinate MAGTFs to be assigned. Also called MAGTF. (MCRP 5-12C)

Night Vision Device – Any electro-optical device that is used to detect visible and infrared energy and provide a visible image. Night vision goggles, forward looking infrared, thermal sights, and low light level television are night vision devices. Also called NVD. (JP 1-02)

Night Vision Goggle(s) – An electro-optical image intensifying device that detects visible and near-infrared energy, intensifies the energy, and provides a visible image for night viewing. Night vision goggles can be either hand-held or helmet-mounted. Also called NVG. (JP 1-02)

Offensive Air Support – Those air operations conducted against enemy installations, facilities, and personnel to directly assist the attainment of MAGTF objectives by the destruction of enemy resources or the isolation of the enemy's military forces. Also called OAS. (MCRP 5-12C)

Preplanned Air Support – Air support in accordance with a program, planned in advance of operations. (JP 1-02)

Proficiency – A measure of achievement of a T&R event skill. Proficiency intervals establish the maximum time between demonstrations of those particular skills for the average individual. (TACP T&R)

Qualification – A status assigned to personnel based on certification and currency requirements. Upon successful completion of qualification criteria, commanding officers are authorized to issue an appropriate qualification letter. An individual failing to comply with currency requirements will result in the individual losing their respective qualification. (TACP T&R)

Rules Of Engagement – Directives issued by competent military authority that delineate the circumstances and limitations under which United States forces will initiate and/or continue combat engagement with other forces encountered. Also called ROE. (JP 1-04)

Simulated CAS (SIMCAS) - Terminal control with no intent to release ordnance. (TACP T&R)

Sortie - In air operations, an operational flight by 1 aircraft. (JP 3-30)

Strike Coordination And Reconnaissance - A mission flown for the purpose of acquiring and reporting deep air support targets and coordinating armed reconnaissance or air interdiction missions upon those targets. Also called SCAR. (MCRP 5-12C)

Supporting Arms Coordination Center - A single location on board an amphibious command ship in which all communication facilities incident to the coordination of fire support of the artillery, air, and naval gunfire are centralized. This is the naval counterpart to the fire support coordination center utilized by the landing force. Also called SACC. (JP 3-09.3)

Suppression Of Enemy Air Defenses - Activity which neutralizes, destroys, or temporarily degrades surface-based enemy air defenses by destructive and/or disruptive means. Also called SEAD. (JP 3-01)

Tactical Air Command Center - The principal US Marine Corps air command and control agency from which air operations and air defense warning functions are directed. It is the senior agency of the US Marine air command and control system that serves as the operational command post of the aviation combat element commander. It provides the facility from which the aviation combat element commander and his battle staff plan, supervise, coordinate, and execute all current and future air operations in support of the Marine air-ground task force. The tactical air command center can provide integration, coordination, and direction of joint and combined air operations. Also called Marine TACC. (JP 3-09.3)

Tactical Air Control Center - The principal air operations installation (ship-based) from which all aircraft and air warning functions of tactical air operations are controlled. Also called Navy TACC. (JP 3-09.3)

Tactical Air Control Party - A subordinate operational component of a tactical air control system designed to provide air liaison to land forces and for the control of aircraft. Also called TACP. (JP 3-09.3)

Tactical Air Coordinator (Airborne) - An officer who coordinates, from an aircraft, the actions of other aircraft engaged in air support of ground or sea forces. Also called TAC(A). (JP 3-09.3)

Tactical Air Direction Center - An air operations installation under the overall control of the tactical air control center or the Marine Corps tactical air command center, from which aircraft and air warning service functions of tactical air operations in support of amphibious operations are directed. Also called TADC. (JP 3-09.3)

Tactical Air Operations Center - The principal air control agency of the US Marine air command and control system responsible for airspace control and management. It provides real-time surveillance, direction, positive control, and navigational assistance for friendly aircraft. It performs real-time direction and control of all anti-air warfare operations, to include manned

interceptors and surface-to-air weapons. It is subordinate to the tactical air command center. Also called TAOC. (JP 3-09.3)

Tactical Recovery Of Aircraft And Personnel – A Marine Corps mission performed by an assigned and briefed aircrew for the specific purpose of the recovery of personnel, equipment, and/or aircraft when the tactical situation precludes Search And Rescue (SAR) assets from responding and when survivors and their location have been confirmed. Also called TRAP. (JP 3-50)

Terminal Attack Control – The authority to control the maneuver of and grant weapons release clearance to attacking aircraft. (JP 3-09.3)

Terminal Control – 1. The authority to direct aircraft to maneuver into a position to deliver ordnance, passengers, or cargo to a specific location or target. Terminal control is a type of air control. 2. Any electronic, mechanical, or visual control given to aircraft to facilitate target acquisition and resolution. See also terminal guidance. (JP3-09.3)

Terminal Guidance – 1. The guidance applied to a guided missile between midcourse guidance and arrival in the vicinity of the target. 2. Electronic, mechanical, visual, or other assistance given an aircraft pilot to facilitate arrival at, operation within or over, landing upon, or departure from an air landing or airdrop facility. (JP3-09.3)

Terminal Guidance Operations (TGO) – Those actions that provide electronic, mechanical, voice, or visual communications that provide approaching aircraft and/or weapons additional information regarding a specific target location. Also called TGO. (JP 3-09.3)

Time On Station – The time that an aircraft can actually spend performing its assigned mission. It does not include the time transiting to and from the operating site. Also called TOS. (MCRP 5-12C)

Time On Target – The actual time at which munitions impact the target. Also called TOT. (JP 3-09.3)

Weaponeering – The process of determining the quantity of a specific type of lethal or nonlethal weapons required to achieve a specific level of damage to a given target, considering target vulnerability, weapons characteristics and effects, and delivery parameters. (JP 3-60)

TACP T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX B

T&R CHANGES

1. Manual Management. Due to the wide range of stakeholders in the TACP T&R Manual, a brief description of the role of stakeholders and the process of manual management is warranted.

a. CG TECOM, Ground Training Division (GTD):

(1) Will manage the TACP T&R Manual and supervise associated program of instruction (POI) development, approval, management, and maintenance.

(2) Will input, update, and manage the T&R events within the Marine Corps Training Information Management System (MCTIMS).

(3) Will serve as the action agent for all T&R manual conferences, reviews, updates, and electronic distribution.

b. CG TECOM, Aviation Training Division (ATD):

(1) Will provide subject matter expert (SME) support of GTD T&R Manual and POI management.

(2) Will support the T&R Manual review process as discussed below.

c. CO, MAWTS-1 will serve as content sponsor by coordinating and validating T&R Manual changes through close liaison with ground and aviation tactical units, EWTGs, GTD, and ATD. MAWTS-1 is the content sponsor and standardization authority for 8002 JTAC, 7502 FAC/AO.

2. T&R Changes

a. T&R Reviews. A T&R review is a forum to routinely review and comprehensively revise the T&R manual. T&R reviews will normally be conducted via conference and produce a new version (e.g. NAVMC 3500.42_). T&R reviews may be held via correspondence with CG TECOM (GTD) approval. T&R reviews will normally convene on a triennial schedule; however, T&R reviews may be convened as appropriate or when higher headquarters direct.

b. T&R changes. A T&R change is a change to an existing T&R between T&R reviews. T&R changes are normally completed via correspondence and produce formal changes to the existing T&R Manual (e.g. NAVMC 3500.42"Ch 1").

3. T&R Review Pre-Conference Procedures

a. Action

(1) Content Sponsor. Content sponsors shall coordinate with CG TECOM (GTD) to establish a T&R conference date and prepare the initial convening message to the appropriate commands employing the MOSs contained in this

Manual with an information copy to CMC (DC AVN, DC PP&O) and MAWTS-1. CG TECOM (GTD) shall release this message 90 days before the proposed conference date. This message shall include the conference convening location and date, announce the purpose, and request interested units to submit agenda items. CG TECOM (GTD) shall coordinate with the content sponsor to consolidate agenda items and release a conference agenda message to COMMARFORCOM, COMMARFORPAC, COMMARFORRES, COMMARSOC, MEFs, MARDIVs, MAWTS-1, and all commands employing the MOSs contained in this Manual.

(2) Total Force. Authorized agencies shall nominate voting representatives to CG TECOM (ATD) via message NLT 45 days prior to the conference. Units shall submit agenda items to CG TECOM (GTD) and the content sponsor (Item, Discussion, Recommendation format) via message NLT 45 days prior to the conference.

(3) CG TECOM. CG TECOM (ATD) shall provide guidance to the content sponsor. CG TECOM (GTD) shall ensure agenda items are distributed to voting members NLT 30 days prior to the subject conference.

b. Conference Funding. Organizations shall program funding requirements for conference attendance per MCO P7100.8 (Field Budget Guidance Manual).

4. T&R Review Conference Procedures

a. All conference attendees shall be familiar with agenda items prior to the conference. Voting members shall staff agenda items and will have established command positions prior to attending a conference. As front-end agenda staffing facilitates the T&R update process, CG TECOM (GTD) discourages accepting additional agenda items during T&R conferences.

b. At the conference, attendees shall review the applicable T&R events and provide change recommendations per standard comment matrix. At a minimum, members of the conference shall complete the following tasks:

(1) Evaluate the events for effectiveness.

(2) Propose changes to the events. Review/validate/modify the following:

- (a) Mission statement/METL.
- (b) Programs of Instruction.
- (c) Content/Phase information.
- (d) Content events.
- (e) Training resource requirements.
- (f) Required T&R matrices/tables.
- (g) Content event conversion matrix.
- (h) T&R content evaluation forms.

(3) Coordinate content requirements with other communities as required.

c. Conference attendees may recommend a specific position, but it is CG TECOM, COMMARFORCOM, COMMARFORPAC, COMMARFORRES, and COMMARSOC who vote. This procedure ensures fair voting practices.

d. Action

(1) Content Sponsor. The content sponsor shall host the conference and ensure each attendee has access to a draft version of the T&R at the completion of the conference.

(2) CG TECOM. CG TECOM (ATD) shall provide conference guidance to the content sponsors and facilitate T&R review procedures. CG TECOM (GTD) shall ensure individual T&R chapters are developed/updated per the policies contained in this Manual.

(3) CG TECOM, COMMARFORCOM, COMMARFORPAC, COMMARFORRES, and COMMARSOC shall designate one voting member with experience in day-to-day supervision of TACP training programs to each conference. The conference attendees should include representatives from each MEF, MARDIV, MAWTS-1, and any other appropriate staff officers. CG TECOM invites HQMC to send representatives.

5. Post-Conference T&R Review Procedures

a. Content Sponsor. The content sponsor shall provide CG TECOM (GTD) a smooth, electronic version of the draft T&R chapters within 10 working days of conference completion. The content sponsor shall coordinate with CG TECOM (GTD) to prepare and release a conference report message to the MARFORs within 10 working days of conference completion. Conference report messages shall delineate significant change recommendations and request MARFORs concur or non-concur with the draft T&R Manual.

b. MARFORs. MARFORCOM, MARFORPAC, MARFORRES, and MARSOC shall consolidate comments from subordinate units and concur or non-concur with justification to CG TECOM via message within 45 days of the conference completion date.

(1) MARFOR command T&R review conference representatives shall brief their respective commands on post conference results.

(2) MARFORs should coordinate to resolve post conference contentious issues.

(3) Failure to respond to post conference deadlines indicates concurrence with T&R content.

c. CMC (DC PP&O, DC AVN). CMC shall review the proposed content and concur or non-concur with justification to CG TECOM via message NLT 90 days after conference completion.

d. CG TECOM

(1) CG TECOM (ATD) shall coordinate with the content sponsor to prepare and release, within 10 working days, a conference report message. CG TECOM shall ensure draft electronic versions are made available to requesting agencies.

(2) CG TECOM shall attach MARFOR comments and forward the draft document to CMC (DC PP&O, DC AVN), NLT 60 days after conference completion. Unresolved issues shall be forwarded to CMC (DC PP&O, DC AVN) for decision.

(3) Upon MARFOR and CMC concurrence, CG TECOM shall approve the revised manual. When the revision is approved by CG TECOM, CG TECOM (GTD) shall release a message announcing the revision has been approved. CG TECOM (GTD) shall coordinate with CMC for publication and distribution as appropriate.

6. T&R Changes via Correspondence

a. Organizations recommending T&R changes shall submit proposed changes in message format via the respective MEF/DIV to CG TECOM (ATD, GTD) and the content sponsor. Correspondence must include rationale for the change.

b. CG TECOM (ATD, GTD) and the content sponsor shall review and forward the proposed change recommendations to all MEFs/DIVs within 5 working days of receipt of the correspondence.

c. MEFs/DIVs shall submit their comments and recommendations to CG TECOM (ATD, GTD) and content sponsor within 30 days of the date of the request for comments. All comments and recommendations shall be submitted via message.

d. CG TECOM (ATD, GTD) and the content sponsor shall consolidate comments and produce a smooth draft of proposed T&R changes (include update of the T&R event conversion matrix if applicable). CG TECOM (GTD) shall release a T&R change recommendation message to the MARFORs and CMC (DC PP&O, DC AVN) within 45 days of the request for comments.

e. CMC (DC PP&O, DC AVN) and the MARFORs shall review the proposed T&R change and concur or non-concur with justification to CG TECOM (GTD) within 30 days of the manual change recommendation message release. Unresolved issues shall be forwarded to CMC (DC PP&O, DC AVN) for decision. Upon concurrence, CG TECOM (GTD) shall release a message approving the T&R manual change.

7. Applicability. When a T&R Manual update or change is approved for use, the approved version of the manual becomes the training standard for all applicable units. Units shall transition to the approved T&R manual as soon as practical.

TACP T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX C

AMMUNITION ROLLUP

Ordnance requirements are developed on a "per person" basis per JCAS AP MOA and TACP T&R requirements.

ORDNANCE	1100 Level	Annual Req ISO TACP Crs	Core Skill Advanced	Core Skill Plus	2500 Level	2600 Level
ROTARY WING						
2.75" Rocket (2,3)	30	6780	6		Note 6	Note 7
TOW	2	452			Note 6	Note 7
HF (4)	2	452	1000		Note 6	Note 7
20mm	1200	271200	3		Note 6	Note 7
FIXED WING						
5.00" Rocket			2		Note 6	Note 7
Mk 80 series bomb	10	2260	5	2	Note 6	Note 7
Laser guided bomb (5)	8	1808	3	2	Note 6	Note 7
Inertially-aided munition			3	2	Note 6	Note 7
20/25mm			1250		Note 6	Note 7
GROUND ORDNANCE						
D529: PROJ 155MM, HE, M795 (8)	45	10170	30		Note 6	Note 7
D550: PROJ 155MM, SMOKE, WP, M110A1 (8)	7	1582	30		Note 6	Note 7
D505: PROJ 155MM, ILLUM. M485A2 (8)	3	678	30		Note 6	Note 7
D540: CHG PROP 155MM, GREEN BAG, M3 (8)	55	12430	30		Note 6	Note 7
N340: FUZE, PD, M739 (8)	52	11752	30		Note 6	Note 7
N289: FUZE, ELECTRONIC TIME M762A1 (8)	3	678	30		Note 6	Note 7
N523: PRIMER, PERCUSSION, M82 (8)	55	12430	30		Note 6	Note 7
Smoke Grenades	4	904	8	16	Note 6	Note 7

Notes: Annual ordnance requirements to maintain aircrew proficiency derived from MAINTAIN table and re-fly interval.

- (1) As stated above the ammunition for the 1100 Level is listed per student. Per the current Program of Instruction (POI) a total of 252 students attend the formal TACP Course (126/EWTG used for "Annual Req" above). Completion of 1100 Level events qualifies the individual as a

JTAC. For complete Marine TAC certification, all events through 2300 Level must be complete.

- (2) 5.00 inch rockets may be substituted for 2.75 inch rockets.
- (3) Inert rockets may be substituted for HE rockets.
- (4) Captive Hellfire missile.
- (5) LGTR may be substituted for laser guided bomb.
- (6) 2500 level training is done in conjunction with 2000 level codes, and has no additional ordnance requirement.
- (7) 2600 level training is done in conjunction with 1100 level codes, and has no additional ordnance requirement.
- (8) Mortar ammunition can be used as a substitute for artillery ammunition if an artillery firing unit is not available.

TACP T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX D

SIMULATION

1. A terminal attack control simulation device should be used to enhance procedural training and mission rehearsal. Simulation devices will be evaluated and accredited by the JFS ESC, or their designated representative, for their capability to replace live controls for maintaining qualification.

a. Units with an accredited simulation device may replace a maximum of 2 live terminal attack controls per 6 month period.

b. The following live controls will not be replaced by simulation:

- (1) 3 fixed-wing (2 Type 1 & 1 Type 2)
- (2) 1 night
- (3) 1 expenditure of live or training ordnance
- (4) 2 non-permissive controls

2. Approved Simulators. For a list of approved simulators, reference JCAS AP MOA.

3. Simulator Definitions. TACP simulation is broken down by three categories; two simulator types and a Practical Exercise.

a. The categories are defined as follows:

(1) Practical Exercise. Hands-on application of the performance required in enabling or terminal learning objectives. Gives the TACP team the opportunity to acquire and practice skills, knowledge, and the behaviors necessary to perform the training objective successfully.

(2) Category I. Immersive simulation environment incorporating a domed visual environment allowing the user to utilize the same or similar equipment they will use during live missions.

(3) Category II. Procedural trainer utilizing front projection or helmet mounted display (HMD); may be PC based.

TACP T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX E

ACRONYMS

AAA Antiaircraft Artillery
AADC. . . . Area Air Defense Commander
AAW Antiair Warfare
ACA Airspace Control Authority
ACE Aviation Combat Element
ACI Air Combat Intelligence
ACO Airspace Control Order
ACP Airspace Control Plan
AEW Airborne Early Warning
AGM Air-To-Ground Missile
AI Air Interdiction
AO Area of Operations
AOC Air Operations Center (Air Force)
AOR Area of Responsibility
AR Armed Reconnaissance
ASC(A). . . Assault Support Coordinator (Airborne)
ASLT. . . . Air Support Liaison Team
ASOC. . . . Air Support Operations Center
ATARS . . . Advanced Tactical Airborne Reconnaissance System
ATO Air Tasking Order
AWACS . . . Airborne Warning and Control System
BDA Bomb Damage Assessment
C2 Command and Control
C3 Command, Control, and Communications
C4I Command, Control, Communications, Computers, and Intelligence
CA Combat Assessment
CAP Combat Air Patrol
CAS Close Air Support
CBU Cluster Bomb Unit
CCIR. . . . Commander's Critical Information Requirements
CEP Circular Error Probable
COA Course Of Action
CSSE. . . . Combat Service Support Element
DAS Deep Air Support
DASC. . . . Direct Air Support Center
DASC(A) . . Direct Air Support Center (Airborne)
EW Electronic Warfare
FAC Forward Air Controller
FAC(A). . . Forward Air Controller (Airborne)
FARP. . . . Forward Arming and Refueling Point
FEBA. . . . Forward Edge of the Battle Area
FFCC. . . . Force Fires Coordination Center
FLIR. . . . Forward Looking Infrared
FOB Forward Operating Base
FRAGO . . . Fragmentary Order
FSCC. . . . Fire Support Coordination Center
FSCL. . . . Fire Support Coordination Line

FW Fixed-wing
GCE Ground Combat Element
GCI Ground Controlled Intercept
GPS Global Positioning System
HIDACZ. . . High-Density Airspace Control Zone
HPT High-Payoff Target
HPTL. . . . High-Payoff Target List
HST Helicopter Support Team
HVT High-Value Target
IAM Inertially-Aided Munition
IFF Identification, Friend or Foe
INS Inertial Navigation System
IOC Initial Operational Capability
IPB Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace
IR Infrared Radiation
JAOC. . . . Joint Air Operations Center
JDAM. . . . Joint Direct Attack Munition
JFACC . . . Joint Force Air Component Commander
JFC Joint Force Commander
JFO Joint Fires Observer
JIPTL . . . Joint Integrated Prioritized Target List
JMEM. . . . Joint Munitions Effectiveness Manual
JSOW. . . . Joint Standoff Weapon
JTAC. . . . Joint Terminal Attack Controller
JTAR. . . . Joint Tactical Air Strike Request
JTCB. . . . Joint Targeting Coordination Board
JTL Joint Target List
LAAD. . . . Low Altitude Air Defense
LANTIRN . . Low-Altitude Navigation and Targeting Infrared For Night
LGB Laser-Guided Bomb
LGM Laser-Guided Missile
LGW Laser-Guided Weapon
LOC Lines of Communications
LSD Laser Spot Designator
LST Laser Spot Tracker
MACCS . . . Marine Air Command and Control System
MACG. . . . Marine Air Control Group
MAG Marine Aircraft Group
MAGTF . . . Marine Air-Ground Task Force
MARFOR. . . Marine Corps Forces
MARLO . . . Marine Liaison Officer
MCDP. . . . Marine Corps Doctrinal Publication
MCPD. . . . Marine Corps Planning Process
MCRP. . . . Marine Corps Reference Publication
MCWP. . . . Marine Corps Warfighting Publication
MEF Marine Expeditionary Force
METT-T. . . Mission, Enemy, Terrain and Weather, Troops and Support
Available-Time Available
MISREP. . . Mission Report
MOOTW . . . Military Operations Other Than War
MOS Military Occupational Specialty
MSC Major Subordinate Command
NATO. . . . North Atlantic Treaty Organization
NFA No Fire Area
NVD Night Vision Device

NVG Night Vision Goggle
NWP Naval Warfare Publication
OAS Offensive Air Support
OPLAN Operation Plan
OPORD Operation Order
OPSEC Operations Security
OPT Operational Planning Team
PGM Precision-Guided Munition
PGW Precision-Guided Weapon
PID Positive Identification
PIR Priority Intelligence Requirement
RAOC. . . . Rear Area Operations Center; Regional Air Operations Center
RFI Request for Information; Request for Intelligence
ROE Rules Of Engagement
RW Rotary-wing
SAAWC Sector Anti-air Warfare Coordinator (USMC)
SAM Surface-To-Air Missile
SCAR. . . . Strike Coordination and Reconnaissance
SEAD. . . . Suppression of Enemy Air Defenses
SERE. . . . Survival, Evasion, Resistance, And Escape
SLAM. . . . Standoff Land Attack Missile
SPINS Special Instructions
STOM. . . . Ship-To-Objective Maneuver
TAC(A). . . . Tactical Air Coordinator (Airborne)
TACAIR. . . . Tactical Air
TACC. . . . Tactical Air Command Center (USMC); Tactical Air Control Center
(USN/USAF)
TACP. . . . Tactical Air Control Party
TADC. . . . Tactical Air Direction Center
TAGS. . . . Theater Air Ground System
TALD. . . . Tactical Air-Launched Decoy
TAOC. . . . Tactical Air Operations Center
TARPS Tactical Airborne Reconnaissance Pod System
TBMCS Theater Battle Management Core System
TGO Terminal Guidance Operations
TLDHS Target Location, Designation, and Hand-Off System
TLE Target Location Error
TOT Time On Target
TR Tilt-rotor
TRAP. . . . Tactical Recovery of Aircraft and Personnel
TSS Target Selection Standards
TVA Target Value Analysis
UAS Unmanned Aerial System
UGS Universal Ground Spotter
UHF Ultra High Frequency
VHF Very High Frequency
WGS-84. . . . World Geodetic System 1984

TACP T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX F

Pre-Requisite Training

1. Prior to attending the TACP course of instruction at a EWTG, prospective JTACs are required to complete the following sections based on background:

a. Pilots/NFOs from FA-18, AV-8, AH-1, or UH-1 backgrounds are required to complete section A.

b. Pilots/NFOs from C-130, MV-22, CH-53, CH-46, and EA-6B backgrounds are required to complete section A and are encouraged to complete sections B and D.

c. Prospective JTACs from ground MOSs are required to complete section A and are encouraged to complete sections B, C, and D.

A. Section A- Required Distance Learning

JTAC 01 Six Functions of Marine Aviation
JTAC 02 Intro to Fire Support in MAGTF Operations
JTAC 03 Battlespace Geometry
JTAC 04 Targeting
JTAC 05 Air Command and Control
JTAC 06 Close Air Support
JTAC 07 Basic Call for Fire
JTAC 08 Advanced Call for Fire
JTAC 09 Nine-Line
JTAC 10 Fixed Wing Employment
JTAC 11 Rotary Wing Employment

Found at <https://www.marinenet.usmc.mil>

B. Section B- Academic Lectures

Aviation Ordnance
Building a 9-Line Mission
RW Employment
FW Employment
ALSA Brevity Terms
Controlling CAS (including practical application)
Aircraft Pods and Capabilities
Laser Designators and IR Pointers*
Thermal Imagers and Night Vision Devices*
Type 2 Control w/Observer*

Found at https://intranet.tecom.usmc.mil/sites/mawts1/tacp_training

*May be completed in conjunction with field events

C. Section C- Practical Applications

Talk On Practical Application
Artillery or Mortar Adjust Fire Mission
Artillery or Mortar SEAD (Cont and Int) Mission
Artillery or Mortar Illumination Mission
Under supervision of the Air Officer, conduct simulated or live Type 1 control
Under supervision of the Air Officer, conduct simulated or live Type 2 control
Under supervision of the Air Officer, conduct simulated or live Type 3 control
Type 2 control w/Observer practical application

D. Section D- Homework Assignments

Ordnance
Laser Geometry

2. Any aviator or ground MOS Marine who has served with the Marine Forces Special Operations Command (MARSOC) and, who has become JTAC certified via an accredited Program of Instruction, will be subject to the following provisions for training that must be accomplished in order to attain the USMC MOS of 7502 or 8002 respectively.

This syllabus is designed to provide a certified JTAC, who has not received JTAC training from either Expeditionary Warfare Training Group Atlantic or Pacific, the necessary exposure, evaluation and standardization to operate as a member of the USMC fire support network as a MAGTF JTAC.

The training expands on the experience and certification that have already been attained via other means, and ensures that JTACs from MARSOC, are awarded the MOS of 7502 or 8002 prior to returning to conventional operating forces. This will ensure that their experience and training can efficiently be capitalized on, and that they will be assigned accordingly with the correct MOS designation per their skill set.

The syllabus is predicated on the following assumptions:

- a. The JTAC was certified via an accredited training program as defined by the JCAS AP MOA.
- b. The JTAC is qualified and current at the time upon arrival at the EWTG for completion of the MOS training.
- c. The JTAC has completed the USMC MarineNet JTAC Primer.

The syllabus is as follows:

a. Upon verification of the aforementioned pre-requisites, through screening of the JTAC performance record by EWTG Staff, the JTAC will attend such academic instruction as is delineated by the EWTG JTACI at the home unit. The EWTG-approved syllabus will be conducted by a certified TACPI. Topics will include Fire Support Integration, USMC Assault Support Operations, and USMC Fire Support procedures.

b. At a minimum, the JTAC will be evaluated in two simulation events by EWTG staff. The events may be conducted at either EWTG or, if coordinated, at the JTAC's home station.

- (1) TAC-SOAS-1111
- (2) TAC-SOAS-1117

c. Upon compilation of all paperwork and verification of equivalency, the request for 7502 / 8002 MOS will be forwarded to HQMC by the EWTG.

d. The next 18 month eval must then be performed by USMC JTACE, at the home unit.

3. Prior to attending the JFO course of instruction at an EWTG, prospective JFOs are required to successfully complete distance learning courses and practical application exercises at the unit level. The required courses/exercises are listed in the EWTG JFO Screening Checklist, which is available by contacting EWTGPAC or EWTGLANT. The practical application exercises shall be conducted by a qualified JTAC. The unit Air Officer shall monitor the overall completion of the checklist.

TACP T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX G

EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS

1. The following table of equipment is designed to support three forward air controllers and three joint terminal attack controllers within the infantry battalion. Each infantry battalion rates four TACP suites. Other maneuver elements may rate more than four suites.

2. Each Tactical Air Control Party Suite of Equipment consists of (1) of the following items:

TAMCN	ITEM	INDICATOR	NSN
E1048BA	Common Laser Range Finder (CLRF)	AN/PEQ-13	1240-01-561-5149
E00427BA	Portable Lightweight Designator Rangefinder(PLDR)	AN/PEQ-17	5860-09-000-4433
E00017GA	Thermal Laser Spot Imager (TLSI)	AN/PAS-25	5855-01-562-9999
E00067BA	Infrared Zoom Laser Illuminator(IZLID)	IZLID 1000	5855-01-502-6414
E11542BA	Monocular Night Vision Device	AN/PVS-14	5855-01-432-0524
E11067GA	Night Vision Mini 4.5X Sight	AN/PVS-17C	5855-01-491-6967
A00917GA	Video Scout Remote Video Exploitation Terminal	RVET	5895-01-567-4768
A25607GA	Target Location Designation and Hand-off System (TLDHS)	AN/PSQ-19A	7010-01-571-6450
A20687GA	Multiband Falcon II Radio Set	AN/PRC-117F	5820-01-462-2484
A20427GA	High Frequency Manpack Radio Set	AN/PRC-150	5820-01-492-3628
A20437GD	Multiband (Urban) Radio Set	AN/PRC-148	5810-09-000-0353
H00102E	Electronic Dual Channel Headset*		5965-01-574-2790

*Each TACP suite of equipment contains (2) Electronic Dual Channel Headsets.

3. The above list will be modified according to new system development and distribution.

TACP T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX H

INDIVIDUAL PERFORMANCE RECORDS

1. JTAC Individual Performance Record (IPR). To properly document accomplishment of JTAC certification and qualification (currency) standards, an IPR shall be initiated by the JTAC schoolhouse and maintained by the JTAC's operational unit. This IPR shall accompany the individual to each duty assignment to provide unit commanders and commanding officers that individual's certification and qualification status to conduct joint terminal attack control operations, and to maintain appropriate records (currency) within the IPR. The IPR shall contain a 6-part documentation system. This is mandatory for all JTACs.

a. Part I - TABLE OF CONTENTS

b. Part II - COMMANDERS DESIGNATION LETTERS. This section contains a copy of the JTAC's current Qualification and Designation letter(s) and a copy of any previous designation letters, if applicable.

c. Part III - CAS LOG. This section contains a record of all controls in legible format and must be in compliance with Appendix (A) of the JCAS AP MOA [Joint Terminal Attack Controller (Ground)]. This section should contain records of all controls performed since initial certification. See figure H-1.

d. Part IV - DOCUMENTATION OF EVALUATIONS. This section contains documentation of all evaluations conducted since initial certification.

e. PART V - DOCUMENTATION OF TRAINING. All Continuation Training and Refresher Training should be documented in Part V to include academics and testing.

f. Part VI - JTAC FORMAL SCHOOL DOCUMENTATION. This section contains any certificates received from attending a formal course of instruction pertaining to CAS or TAC.

2. MEF/DIV Air Officers (AOs) shall maintain a JTAC qualification status record/log of all personnel who have previously received the JTAC qualification. MEF/DIV AOs shall utilize the format shown in figure H-2.

DATE	RANGE NAME AND LOCATION	NUMBER AND A/C TYPE	TYPE OF ORDNANCE	NUMBER OF CONTROLS	TYPE OF CONTROL/MARK/DAY OR NIGHT*	CONTROLLER'S SIGNATURE	SUPERVISOR'S INITIALS	REMARKS
2-Feb-01	Coleman, Ft Bragg, NC	2 x A-10s	30MM MK-82	1	1/IR/N			
28-Feb-01	Manchester, Ft Bragg, NC	2 x F-16s	Dry	4	2/NA/D			
10-Mar-01	Shoal Creek, Ft Hood, TX	2 x A-10s	BDU-33	2	1/LD/D			
22-Mar-01	Coleman, Ft Bragg, NC	2 X A-10s	AGM-65G	1	1/LD/N			
<p>* This column should be completed in the following order: Type of Control/Type of Mark/Day or Night Mission. Controls: Type 1 Control = 1, Type 2 Control = 2, Type 3 control = 3; Marks: Laser Designation = LD, IR = IR, White Phosphorus WP, Red Phosphorous = RP, Illume - IL, indirect Fire or Artillery = IF, Direct Fire = DF, Talk on = TO, No mark - NA; Day or Night: Day = D, and Night = N. Example: A Type I CAS mission using illume or deck during the daytime would be annotated as 1/IL/D.</p>								

Figure H-1. Sample CAS Log.

JTAC Qualification Status for X MEF/DIV			
Individual	Unit	JTAC Certification date	JTAC Qualification Status
I. M. Jarhead	2/5	19 Apr 2004	Certified and Qualified
			Certified but not Qualified
			Certified and still in training (not qualified)

Figure H-2. Sample JTAC Qualification Status Log.